The Prose Life of Alexander
The Prose Life of Alexander.
(THORNTON MS.)

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY.

Original Series, 143.

1913 (for 1911).

Price 10s.
OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Original Series
No. 143.
The Prose Life of Alexander.

FROM THE THORNTON MS.

EDITED BY

J. S. WESTLAKE, M.A.

THE TEXT.

*LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,
68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.
AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,
AMEN CORNER, E.C.

1913 (for 1911)
PREFATORY NOTE

The delay in issuing this important prose romance has been due to the prolonged illness of its editor, Mr. J. S. Westlake. Even now Mr. Westlake has not been able to attend to the revision and publication of the book. The collation with the manuscript has been made for the Society by Miss E. M. Thompson, the proofs have been read over by Mr. John Munro, and a few changes have been made in the side-notes, foot-notes and head-lines, which otherwise remain as Mr. Westlake left them. The translations from the Latin text which make good the lacunae in the manuscript have also been inserted by Mr. Westlake.

The Introduction, together with the Notes and Glossary, are reserved for a future volume. Mr. Westlake's elaborate side-notes provide, meanwhile, a useful epitome of the story.

The Society is greatly indebted to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln for depositing the manuscript in the British Museum, and to the Keeper of the Manuscripts, Mr. J. P. Gilson, for receiving it there.

I. G.
THE PROSE LIFE OF ALEXANDER.
LIFE OF ALEXANDER

The most learned Egyptians who know of the size of the earth, the waves of the sea, and the order of the heavens (betokening the way of the stars and the turning of the skies), have bequeathed these things to the whole world through the highness and the wisdom of magic knowledge. And they tell of a king of that land, by name Anectanabus, great in understanding, and full of love in astrology and mathematics. Now, upon a day it happened that a messenger came, and said unto him that Artaxerxes, king of the Persians, was drawing nigh towards him with a very great force of foes. Yet he did not call out his army, nor get ready his advance. Instead of this, he hurried into his bed-chambers in his palace, and, taking down a brazen shell, which was full of rain-water, and holding in his hand a brazen rod, sought by magic spells to summon the devils. By which wizardry he felt, in the shell itself, the fleets sailing over him amid fearful affray.

Now there were lords of Anectanabus set in sway over his armies to guard the Persian border.

And one hapless man coming to him, besought him: 'O most mighty King Anectanabus, there ariseth against thee Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, with an untold horde of foes and strange races. For they are Parthians, Medes, Persians, Syrians, Mesopotamians, Brapes, Phares, Argiri, Chaldaeans, Bachiri, Confires, Hircanians, and Agiophii, and many other folks coming from Eastern lands.' On hearing this, Anectanabus said, sighing: 'The trust that I gave to thee, heed thou right well; yet thy prowess hath not been the prowess of a doughty man, but the doings of a cowardly fellow. For worth showeth itself, not in the greatness of the folk, but in the steadfastness of their souls. Dost thou not know one lion putteth many
2 Anectanabus's flight from the Persians. He greets Olympias.

The king sees his farther fill-luck by wizardry. 

He fleeth unto Ethiopia and from Ethiopia to Macedonia and is there a soothsayer. 

The Egyptians learning his absence get an oracle why he is gone and when he shall come back again victorious. They make of him a black stone image. 

does to flight? And having said these words, he went into his chamber alone, and made brazen shells, and filled them with rain-water, and held in his hand a palm rod, and gazing into this, began, as hard as he could, to utter spells, and beheld how the Egyptians were being smitten down at the onslaught of the Barbarians' ships.

Forthwith he changed his dress, and shaved his head and beard, and took gold as much as he might bear, and which might be needful to him to busy himself with wizardry. And thus he fled from Egypt, near by Pelusium. And at length, coming into Ethiopia, he put on linen apparel, and in the guise of an Egyptian seer went into Macedonia. And there he sate himself, and before all the Greeks, and in their sight was soothsaying. But the Egyptians, when they saw how Anectanabus was not at Court, went to Serapis, who was their greatest god, and besought him that he might give them answer as to Anectanabus their king. And Serapis replied: 'Anectanabus, your king, is gone from Egypt because of Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, who will subdue you unto his lordship. Nevertheless, when a short time hath flown by, he will come back to shake off his thraldom, and will be avenged on your foes, and yoke them under you.' And as soon as they had got this answer, they made a kingly statue out of a black stone, in honour of Anectanabus. And they wrote on it, at his feet, this saying, that it might be handed down for their offspring to think of. But Anectanabus remained in Macedonia, nor was he known.

How Anectanabus went up to the Palace to Olympia the Queen.

In the meantime, Philip, king of Macedon, went out to battle. But Anectanabus went forward to the palace, that he might behold Olympia the queen, and see how fair she was. And when he saw her, his heart was smitten with love of her, and stretching forth his hand, he greeted her, saying, 'Hail, Queen of Macedon, disdaining to call her 'lady'. And she, Olympia, answered him, speaking thus: 'Hail, master, come thou and sit near.' And when he sate thus, Olympia
asked many things of him. 'Art thou not an Egyptian?' And Anectanabus answered: 'The word thou saidst was kingly, when thou didst name the Egyptians. For the Egyptians are wise, and read dreams, understand the birds of the air in their flight, open up the hidden places, and tell the fate of those newborn, babes. Of all these things, as a seer, I, too, have knowledge.' And Olympia saw how he gazed upon her, and spoke, 'Master, of what dost thou bethink thee, who thus lookest on me?' And Anectanabus answered, 'I call to my mind many answers of the gods. One answer had been that I was to look upon a queen.' And saying this, he drew forth from his breast a cleansing tablet of bronze and ivory, inwrought with gold and silver, and on its face were three whirls. The first contained in itself the Twelve Minds, and in the third, sun and moon were fashioned. Next to them, was seen a chain of ivory, and from it he pulled forth seven wonder-bright stars, that told the hours and birth-dooms of men, and seven carven stones, and two stones for the saving men whole.

And Olympia beheld these things, and said: 'Master, if thou wouldst I should believe thee, tell me the year, the day and hour of the king's birth.' And upon this, he said to the queen, 'Wishest thou to hear nothing else from me?' Quoth the queen, 'Tell me what shall fall out betwixt Philip and me, for men say that, when Philip shall come from the war, he will thrust me forth, and take another mate.' And Anectanabus answered: 'They prate of many things untruly; but ere a long time pass, it shall be as they say.' And the queen answered: 'I beg thee, master, unveil me all the truth.' Thereupon Anectanabus said: 'One of the mightiest gods shall share thy bed and uphold thee through all thy thrivings and downfalls, even if they be overstrong.' Olympia replied: 'I beseech thee, say what shape this god shall put on?' Anectanabus replied: 'Neither young, nor old; his beard besprinkled with white hairs. Wherefore, if this please thee, be ready for him, for at night shalt thou see him, and in thy sleep shall he lie by thee.' The queen said: 'If I behold this, neither as a seer, nor as godly, but, as the god himself, will I worship [thee]. And at once Anectanabus said, 'Fare thee well, O queen.' After this Anectanabus, leaving the palace, and walking straight forth
As a god he knows her, begets Alexander, besields her.

Leaving her he digs up herbs that he may so delude her.

And having dreamt Olympia calls him to her, he tells her how to enable the god to come to her first seeming as a snake.

She gives him a chamber in the palace. He lieth by the queen seemingly as a god and sealeth her womb, saying the child shall not be upbraided for his birth.

Thus was she cheated; and was with child. But she, in fear, asks him how to escape Philip's wrath.

He comforts her and through wizardry makes King Philip dream a god is lying with his wife who, after, sealeth her womb, to the city's camp in a desert spot, tore up herbs, and ground them, and took their juice, and wrought spells and other like things of the fiend, that in that same night Olympia might behold the god Hamon lying beside her, and saying to her: 'Woman, thou hast conceived him who shall besield thee.' And, on the morrow, Olympia awoke from her slumbers, and called Anectanabus to her, and told him of the dream she had beheld. Then Anectanabus said: 'If thou wilt give me a room in the palace, thou shalt see the god himself, face to face. For that god shall come to thee in the shape of a great snake, and soon after, taking on a manlike body, he shall seem to be in my likeness.' And to this Olympia said: 'As thou hast spoken, master, do. Take to thyself a bed in the palace, and canst thou make good the truth thereof, I will deem thee to be the father of the boy.' And, about the first watch of the night, Anectanabus took on him, through spells and wizardry to be changed into the shape of a great snake, and whistling on to the bedchamber of Olympia, to fly through. And he entered her room, and rose on to her bed, and with great love began to kiss her, and the kisses betokened to her who he was. And when he rose up from the bed, he smote her on the womb, and spake: 'This begetting be thy avenging, and in no wise may it be upbraided of men.'

On such a fashion was Olympia cheated, who had lain with a man as though he had been a god. And in the morning, Anectanabus went down from the palace, and the queen was with child.

And when she began to be big, she called unto her Anectanabus, saying: 'Master, tell me, what doom will Philip wreak on me, when he shall come back?' And Anectanabus said to her, 'Be not afraid: god Hamon will champion thee.' And with these words he left the palace, and went outside the town, to a barren spot. And, uprooting grasses, rubbed them, and grated them, and took their sap. And he caught a sea-bird, and began to sing over the herbs, and anoint the herbs with the sap. This he did in fellowship with the fiends, that he might betray King Philip through a dream. And this was brought about. That same night the god Hamon appeared to Philip, in a dream, lying with his wife Olympia, and, the night ended, he
saw him touch her womb, and seal it with a golden ring. And on this ring there was a stone, and graven on this a lion’s head, and the chariot of the sun, and a very sharp sword. And he said to her: ‘Woman, thou hast conceived thy saviour.’ And Philip awoke from his sleep, and calling Arideus, made known to him the dream, and what he had seen. And Arideus said: ‘Philip, not from man, but from a god, hath thy wife conceived.

In truth, the lion’s head and the chariot of the sun and the sharp sword, foretoken that he, who shall be born of her, shall journey to the East whence riseth the sun! And with the sharp sword shall he underyoke to himself the nations of the whole world.’

How Anectanabus in the Shape of a Mighty Dragon went to the fore in front of Philip and overcame his Enemies in the Fray.

In the meanwhile, King Philip fought and won. For there appeared in the battle a dragon, who went before him and laid low his foes. And when he came back to Macedonia, he met and kissed Olympia. And King Philip gazed on her, and said, ‘To whom, O Olympia, hast thou given thyself up. For sinned thou hast, yet not sinned, for as much as thou hast brooked frowardness from a god. But I have seen all that has been done by a god on thee, in a dream: therefore be blameless in my eyes, and the eyes of all men!’

How Anectanabus in the Shape of a Dragon came before Philip at a Festival and kissed Olympia.

On a certain day Philip was feasting with his lords and chieftains of Macedonia and with Olympia his wife. And Anectanabus through wizardry took on himself the shape of a dragon, and, passing through the midst of the couch whereon they lay apart, whissled so loudly that all the revellers were stricken with fear, and the greatest dread, and coming near Olympia, he put his head on her breast and kissed her. Philip, seeing this, spoke to Olympia, ‘Woman, thee and all I tell; beheld this dragon, what time I laid my enemies low.’

With the dragon’s aid King Philip wins the fight, and coming back he speaks as in joke to his wife as to what has befallen her.

At a feast Anectanabus comes to Olympia as a dragon and Philip tells the guests what has happened.
Amid wonders the child is born.

How a Bird laid an Egg in Philip's Bosom at whose breaking there came forth a Serpent, which forthwith died.

A bird lays an egg in King Philip's lap, which breaking gives forth a snake, which before it can go back dies. His sorcerer reads him its meaning.

The queen is comforted by wizardry till the child is born.

Mighty wonders happen, and Philip is persuaded to let the child be fostered as though he were his own son.

And a few days after this Philip the king was sitting in his palace, and there appeared unto him a little and most gentle bird, which flew into his bosom and laid an egg. And the egg, falling to the ground, was broken. And at once there crept forth from it a very little snake. And it turned around, wishful to go into the egg, but, before it might put in its head, it was quenched. And Philip, seeing this, was heavily distressed, and called to him Arideus, and showed him the monstrous thing he had seen. And Arideus said to him, 'King Philip, a son shall be born to thee, who shall reign after thy death, and shall fare forth over the whole world and sway all peoples, and ere he come back to the land of his birth, shall die by a most swift death.'

And as the time of child-birth was drawing nigh, Olympia began to feel pain, and her womb was tormented, and she bade Arideus be called to her, and spoke with him: 'Master, my womb is wrenched with very heavy labours.' Anectanabus [sic in both editions 1489 and 1494] then spake: 'Raise thyself awhile from thy throne, for in this hour the elements are troubled by the sun.' This was done, and the pain went from her. And soon after, Anectanabus said to her, 'Sit down, O Queen!' and she sate herself and bore a child. And as soon as the boy was fallen on to the earth, a mighty thunderclap and thunderbolts, with tokens and lightnings came about throughout the whole world. Then night was spread forth and lasted, it reaching unto the last hour of day. Then parts of the clouds fell down in Italy. And seeing these signs, Philip the king was affrighted, and went in to Olympia, and said: 'I deemed that this little babe should in no wise be fostered. For he is not conceived of me, but of some god, for at his birth I beheld the heavens changed. Yet let him be fostered in my memory, as though he were my son, and follow in the stead of a son I begot through another wife.' And when he said this, she handled the babe with great care. And the boy's face had the likeness neither of father nor mother. The hair on his head

And...

Egg
The child is named Alexander; his wondrousness.

was shaggy as a lion's. His eyes glistened like the stars, but each beamed with its own hue, one black, the other yellow. And his teeth were sharp, and his eager rush as a lion's. His shape foreshadowed his energy and forethought. By his parents he was called Alexander. In the schools, and wheresoever he sate, he strove with them in letters and disputation, and by his keen swiftness won the mastership. And when he was twelve years old, he was beweaponed for battle, and excelled in arms. And Philip, seeing how quick he was, praised him, and said: 'Son Alexander, I love thy speed, and wit of mind for its work. But I am sore and feel foolish that thy form is so unlike mine.'

And Olympia heard this, and was greatly afraid. And she called hither Anectanabus, and said: 'Master, learn from me what Philip mid-deemeth. For he said to Alexander, "Son, I love thy speed and wit of mind. But, that thy shape is unlike mine, I am saddened."' And Anectanabus began to think, and said: 'His thought is nowise harmful.' And gazing aloft as he was wont, he looked on a certain star, and riddled out his wish. And when Alexander heard this, he spake:

'The star thou seest is seen in the heavens?' And Anectanabus replied: 'My son, it is.' Alexander said: 'Canst thou show it unto me?' Anectanabus answered: 'Follow me in the hour of night, and I will show it unto thee.' Alexander said: 'Thy fate is not known to thee, or uncertain?' Anectanabus replied: 'Enough of this.' Alexander said: 'I would fain know it.' Anectanabus answered: 'In truth know that from my son shall come my death.' This said, as he went down from the palace, Alexander followed him in the hour of the evening without the city. And when they arrived up on to the ditch of the city, Anectanabus spake: 'Son Alexander, gaze thou on the stars; look how the star of Hercules is perplexed, and how Mercury's star is blithe. If I see Jove sparkling, my doom telleth me of my coming death at the hands of my son.' At this sight Alexander came up nigh to him, and made an onslaught on him, making him fall

[The early Text begins.]

Leaf 1. Anectanabus falls
A Prince of Macedonia brings a fierce horse to the palace which the king uses to slay evildoers.

King Philip has an oracle of his gods.

Alexander taught the seven sciences by Aristotle and Calisthenes.

Death of Anectanabus, and the finding of Bucephalus.

into the dyke and Alexander tells him it is right punishment.

Anectanabus tells Alexander that he is his own son. Alexander reproaches his mother.

wreche,' quop he, 'that presume to tell thynges pat ere to com, re3te als pou were a prophete, and knewe pe prenate of heuen. Now may pou see that pou ly3, And pare-forye pou arte worthy to hafe swylke a dede.' And than Anectanabus ansered, & said: 'I wyster wele yno6he, quop he, 'pat I scholde die swylke a dede. Talde I no3te lange are to pe, that my6 awem6 so6 schulde slae me?' 'Whi, ame I thi so6?' pai6 quop Alexandire: '3aa, for sothe, quop Anectanabus, 'I gat the.' And wit pat word; he zalde pe gast. And than Alexander hert tendind6 on his Fader, And he tuk hym vp on his bakke, and bare hym to pe palace. And when his moder Olympias saw hym, Scho said vn-tiff hym. 'S6n,' quop scho, 'what es that?' 'Als thi folly hase made it,' quop he, 'so it es.' And than he gert berey hym worshipfully.

1 In the mene tyme, a prynce of Macedoyne broghte pe kyng a horse vn-temed, a grete and a faire; & he was tyed o6 ilke 16 side wit chynes of Iren, for he walde wery men6 and etc pai6. This ilke horse was calle6 Buktiphalas, bi-caus of his ugy lukynge. For he hade a heuen6 lyke a butle, & knottits in his frount, as pay had bene pe bygyannyng of hounes. And when pe kyng saw pe bewtee of this horse, he said tiff his servandis, 'Take3 this horse and putte hym in a stable, and makes barre3 of yren be-fore hym, that thefe3 and oper mysdoers, pat salt be done to dede, maye be putt in-tiff hym, to be slaen of hym. 24 And pay didd6 soo. In pe mene tyme pe kyngpe Philippe had6 ane answere of his goddes, that hee schulde regne neste after hym, the whille myghte ryde that wylde horse wit-owtten6 harme. So it fett6 pat Alexander pe whilke was pai6 twelue 3ere 28 alde, wexe strange & re3te hardy, & was wysse and discrete; for he was wele lered6 & command6 in all pe scien6 sciences, pe whilke twa philosophirs had teched hym: pat es to say, Arestotle & Calistene. And one a day, as Alexander passed6 for-by pe place pare als pe foresaide stode, he luked in betwene pe barre3 of yrnae and saw, bifiore pe horse, mens hend6 and fete, & oper of pare membirs, liggand scatered6 here & thare, and he had6 grete wonder pare-off. And he putt in his 36

1 Space for miniature blank, ten lines.
2 a changed by scribe into pe.
3 Buktiphalas. In MS. a blot has smudged out all the i except a dot, and obscured the p, making it look like Buksiphalas, but it reads really as above.
hande bitwene þe barre3. And þe horse * strekeþ oute his nekke, als ferre als he myghte, and likkeþ Alexander hand; and he kneled donẽ on his kneesse, and bi-helde Alexander in þe vesage

4 langly. And Alexander vnderstode wele þe wift of þe horse, and opyn þe barre3, and went into þe horse, and straked him softly on þe bakke wit his rîȝte hand; And belyfe þe horse were wonderly make till Alexander; and riȝte as a honde wift conehe whenþ his maister biddes hym, so dide he tiff Alexander; and Alexander lukede besides hym, & sawe a sadif & a brydlef hyng thare; and he tuk & dyd'woun on hym, & leppe on his bakke; & rade furthe on hym. And whenþ the kynge Philippe

12 sawe hym do so, he sawd vn-tiff hym 'Mi soñ Alexander' quoþ he: 'Aſt þe anwers of our godde3 are fullfillede in the! For whenþ I ame dede, þou moñ regne after me.' And Alexander ansuerd, & said 'I pray the, Fader,' quoþ he, 'ordeyne me horse & meñ, for I gaa seke dedez of armes.' 'For soþe' quoþ þe kynge wit a glade chere, 'Take þe a hundreth horse, and xi thosande3 pounde of golde; and take wit the of þe worthieste knyghte3 þat langeþ to me, and wendis furthe.' And he dide so.

20 And he tuk wit hym also a philosophre þat bighte Eu- festius, whilke he traysted3 mekiff in, And twelue childre þat he chese to be his playfers, and went hym furthe, and come in-tiff a contreth þat es called Polipone. And whenþ the kynge of þe land3 herd3 teſt, þat swilke meñ ware entred in-to his rewe in swilke araye, he raysed a gret Oste, and come agaynes Alexander for to feghte wit hym. And whenþ he come nerehand3 hym, he sawd vn-tiff hym. 'Teſt me' quoþ he

28 'what þou erte?' And Alexander ansuerd 'I am Alexander,' quoþ he 'þe soñ of Philippe, þe kynge of Macedoyne.' 'And what hopeþ þou pat I be?' quoþ þe kynge tiff hym. And Alexander ansuerd. 'þou erte kynge of Arridouns' quoþ he.

32 'Neuer-þe-lesse, if aſt I do þe þat wirchippe þat I calle þe kynge, empride þe nathynge þare-of. For meñ se3 ofte tymes meñ þat ere in heghe astate conu in lawe degree, & meñ þat ere in lawe degree, come tiff heghe astate.' 'þou sais rîȝte wele' quoþ þe kynge. 'Take hede to thyw awen selfe!' And Alexander ansuerd & said 'Ga beheth3 away fra me' quoþ he 'for þou can3 say noghte to mee, ne I hafe noghte at do wit þe.' And þaþ þe kynge was wonder wurthe, And said tiff Alexander

*Leaf 1 bk.

Alexander sees Bucephalus. Bucephalus bows and submits to him.

Philip sees Alexander riding Bucephalus and says the oracles are full-filled.

Philip at Alexander's asking gives him arms and men to invade foreign territory.

Alexander's encounter with the King of the Arridons.

They quar-rel fiercely.
Alexander’s first encounter, and victory.

* Leaf 2

The king challenges Alexander. Alexander accepts, and they both go home to gather forces.

Alexander gathers his army, meets King Nicholas and slays him after the fight.

On his home-coming, he finds his father at bridal with a new wife, and begs him to take Olympia back again.

And agaynes he day of Batelle, Alexander, bi ascent & ordnance of kyngge Philippe, gadird a grete Oste, & went to the place pore pe Batelle was assigned, and fand all redy pore, 16 kyng Nｌoｆ and his oste. And pay trumped vp appoyn bathe pe parties, and bigan to feghte, & many men were slain on bathe pe sydez. Bot at pe laste, Alexander hade pe felde, & take kyng Nichoｌ, & gart smythe of his heued, & went in-till 20 his land, and conquered it; and his knyghtes went and coround hym kyngge pore-off. And sythence he went hame till his fader, kyngge Philippe, and fand hym sittand at the mete at a bridale:

For he had put awaye fra hym his wyfe Olympias, Alexander 24 moder, and takeyn hym an-oper pat highte Cleopatra; And Alexander went in-to pe haule, and said vn-to pe kyngge Philipphe: ‘Fader,’ quop he, ‘I pray 30w, pat for a rewarde of my firste iournee pat I hafe now made, 3ee graunte me to take 28 my Moder Olympias agaynse vn-to 30w, & do to hir as awe to be done to a qwene 2, rathere þan I gyffe hir to anoper kyngge; so þat I be noste youre enemy for ever. For this weddyng, þat 3e hafe now made here, es vnleffet!’ Whene 32 he hadd said þir wordes, ane of þe þat satt at þe kyngges burde, whase name was Lesias, ansnered & said to þe kyngge: ‘lord’ quop he þe þou schall hafe a sow of Cleopatra, and he schall regne after þe!’ Alexander, þan, was gretly grenade at his 36 wordes, and wyt a wardrere þat he hade in his hande, he went

1 Place for miniature blank, twelve 2 MS. quene with e inserted above text.
Alexander's quarrel with Philip, and the reconciliation. 11

till hym and kellede hym. When kyng Philippe sawe this, he was greatly stirred, and rase vp, & gatt a swerde & rame to-warde Alexander, for to hase smytte hym. Bot onane he felle dowi; and ay pe nerre Alexander pat he drewe, pe mare he felle to the erthe rizte as ho bene fern. And pa Alexander said vn-till hym: 'Philippe' qo he 'how es it soo, that pou, pat base wound wit dynt of swerde alle Greece, ne hase now na strengte to stande on thi fete.' And pa all pe haulle was troubled, and the brydale letted. And Alexander went abowte pe haulle, and keste dom pe boursel wit pe mete, & pe drynke pat were appon pa, & take Cleopatra, and schotte hir oute at pe haulle dere. And the kynge Philippe, for sorowe pat he take till, felle grefe seke. And a littill afterwardes, Alexander went till hym for to vesett hym & conforthe hym, and said vn-till hym 'Philippe,' quop he, 'if ait it be noste semely, pat I calle pe be pi propre name; neure-pe-lesse, noste as pi soi, bot as pi guil frend, I saft telle the myn avice. It es fully my conseile pat pou reconseille agayne vn-to the my lady, my Moder Olympias, and at pou grefe pe na-thynge at pe dede of Lesias, ne take na heuynes to the pare-fore. For vnkyndely me thynke pat pou didd, & vngudely, pat pou drewe pi swerde for to smyte me pare-wit.' And when Philippe herd piir wordes, his hert tendird, & he bigane to wepe. And pa Alexander went till his Moder Olympyas, and said vn-till hir: 'Be noste ferde' quop he 'ne be noste heny to my fader, for if aitl thi trespas be pruence, & noste knawe, neuer-pe-lesse pou erte in party to blame.' And when he iade sayde thus, he led hir furthe to pe kyng Philippe. And he tuk & kyssid hir, and thus was scho reconseille vn-till hym agayne.  

3 After pis, pare come messengers Fra Darius, pe emperour of Perse, to kynge Philippe, and asked hym tribute. And Alexander anserwed to thir messengers, & saide, 'Saise to Darius, your lorde;' quop he, 'pat sen pe tyme pat Philippe soi was waxedi of age pe hen pat ay es waxedi barayne & consumed Alexander slays him.  

* Leaf 2 bk.

King Philip having in vain sought to kill Alexander, Alexander upsets the feast and casts out Cleopatra.  

King Philip having fallen sick, Philippe brings him and Olympia together again.  

Philip weeps and Alexander.  

Messengers come from Darius the Emperor of Persia, to whom Alexander refuses the next letter.  

1 The first vowel is either a y changed into e, or an e changed into y. Hence it is uncertain if kylyde or kelde was written first. I think kylyde was first written and changed to kelde from the link with

2 MS. seems certainly when magnified to write o, schotte, although it is blotted.  

3 Space left for miniature, eleven half lines.
The First Eastern wars; murder of Philip.

wonted tribute.


Pansamy, a lord, covets Philip’s wife and kingdom; he revolts and wounds king Philip to the death.

Alexander comes back in the midst of the troubles and his mother goes to meet him.

Pansamy goes forth to meet Alexander, but Alexander slays him.

awaye, and so es Darius pruyede of his trybute.” And [when] thir messengers herd thir wordes; pay hade grete wounder of pam & of pe witt & pe wisedome of Alexander.

In pe mene tyume tythynges come to kynge Philippe, *pat Ermony, 4 pe whilke bi-fore was suget vn-till hym, was rebelle & raysse agaynes hym. And he garte * semble a grete Oste, and sent Alexander thedir pare wit to feghte wit Pam, and to putt Pam agayne vnder the subieccion. Alexander than went wit this Oste 8 till Ermony & braghte it agayne in subieccion, as it was bi-fore.

An in pe mene tyume, while he was pare, a lorde of Macedoynye pe whilke highte Pansamy, a strange man & a balde, suget vn-to Philippe, and hade of lange tyume couette for to hase pe quene 12 Olympias, conspriede agaynes pe kynge, and come with a grete multytude of folke appoD pe kynge, to for-do hym. And when tythynges here of come to kynge Philippe, he went to mete hym in pe felde wit a fewe menzec. And when he sawe pe grete malti-
tude *pat Pansamy hade wit hym, he turned & fledD, and Pansamy pursued after hym, and overhied hym, and strake hym thurghe wit a spere, and 3itt ife alfi he were greusely wounded, he dyed ate alsone, but he laye halfe dede in the waye. And than 20 pe Macedoynes, *pat wenede he hade bene dede, made mekiD sorowe. And when pis iournee was done Pansamy was gretly empridede pare offe, & went in to pe kynges palace for to take pe qwene Olympias oute of it and hase hir with hym. 24 And euen pe same tyume, Alexander come fra Hermony, & save 3 swaylke trouble & styrrynge in the rewme, and byed hym faste toward pe kynge palace, and when Olympias herD teD pe Alexander hir soD hode pe victorie of his enemys, 28 & was commande nere, Scho went furthe of pe palace at a preuenc posterne to mete hir soD, and to welcome hym hame. And alsone als scho come here hym, scho criede appoD hym & said:

‘A A, my son Alexander, where es pe grace & pe fortune 32 peoure goddes highte the, *pat es to say, *pat pon scholde alwaye overcome thymD enemys & noDte be overcomeD, *pat Pansamy have one pis wyse shen thi Fader.’ And alsone the wordes come to Pansamy *pat Alexander was comeD, and he 36 went furthe of palace for to mete hym. And also faste als Alexander sawe hym, he oute wit a swordD and clafe his heued.

1 MS. blotted at save.
King Philip's death and burial. Alexander's hurangue. 13

in to þe tethe, & slewe hym. And ane of þe Oste said tifiñ Alexander: 'Philipphe pi sader' quœp he, 'lyes dede in þe felde.' And þan Alexander went thedir thare he laye, and saw hym erew at þe dyeinge. And þau he began faste for to wepe. And Philipphe loked apœw hym, & said. 'A A, my dere son Alexander,' quœp he, 'wit a glade hert [I] may now dye, for þat þou so soone hase venged my dede,' & erew wit þat 8 worde he zalde þe gaste. And Alexander wirchifullly gert hym be entered.

1 When kyng Philipphe was entered, Alexander went and sett hym in his trone, and gerte calle by-fore hym alle þe folke þat was gadered thedir, lordeþ & oper, & said vn-to þau on þis wyse. 'Meñ,' quœp he, 'of Macedoyne of Tracey, and of Greece byhaldæ þe seegure of Alexander and putte oute of ʒour hertes drede of alþe ʒour enemys. For sekerly, and ʒe will take gude hertis to ʒow, thurgh þe helpe of oure goddis be schalif hafe þe onerhande of alþe ʒour neghtebours, and ʒour name schal if spreð ʒour alle the werlde. And þære-for eilke of ʒow þat hase Armour, makes it redy, and he þat hase hane come to my palace & I sañl gerre delyuer hym alle þat hym nedis, and ilk a man make hym redy to þe werre.' And whend þe lordeþ and knyghtis þat ware of grete age, hernþ þir wordes þay answered Alexander, & said vn-tiff hym: 'lorde,' quœp þaye, 'we hafe seruued ʒoure sader a longe tyme & trancel'd wit hym in his werres, & þære-for we ere now so bryssé in armes þat þære [es] no myghte lette in vs for to sufure disesse þat ofen tymes falles to men of werre. For we ere streken in grete age. And þære-for, if it be plesyng vn-to ʒow, we consaile ʒow & we beseken ʒowe, that ʒe chese ʒow ʒong lordeþ & ʒong knyghtes, þat ere listy men þable for to sufure disesse for to be wit ʒow. For here we giihe vp att armes if it be ʒow witt & forsakes þau for ever.' And þau Alexander answered & said: 'I witt rathere,' quœp he, 'chese þe sadnesse of an alde wyse man þan þe vnavesy lightenesse of ʒonge men. For ʒong men ofen tymes traystand to mekiñ in thaire awenû doȝhtynes thurgh þaære awenû foly erce mescheued. Bot alþe men wirkes all by consaile & by witte.' When þe had said þir wordes all men Alexander is told of his father's dying state. He goes to him and hears his last words.

Philip dies. * Leaf 3 bk.

He foretells to them their rule over the world, and bids them get ready their weapons for war. But those of great age beg leave that they should not be made to go on new wars, but rather the younger men.

Old men work with wisdom, young men with boldness and rashness.

1 Twelve half lines space for miniature in MS.
allowed his lie witte and hally pry assentede to hym for to do his lyste.

1 Some after Alexander assembled a grete Oste, & went bi Schippe to-warde3 Ytaly, and als he come by Calcedoyne, he 4 assayled it rete strangely, and pe folke of Calcedoyne * went to pe walles of pe Citee and defendi'd manly. Bot at the laste Alexander war'd the Citee, and fra thethyn he Schippe de in-till Italy. And alsone als pe Romaynes hent of his comynge 8 pry were wonder ferde for hym, and the grete lorde's of pe lande take fourty thousands of besande3 and 10 corounes of golde, and went vn-till hym, and presant hym wit 8am & bysoughte hym 5at he scholde nozte werrey appo 8am, ne 12 do 8am naarme. And than Alexander take trybute of pe Romaynes, and of alte the folkes 5at duelt bitwixe that & pe weste Occeane, 8pe whilke regione es called Europe, & letfe 8am in gude pesse.

2 Fra thethyn he Schippede in-till Affrice, in thee whilke he fande bot fewe 5at rebelled agaynes hym and 8are-fore als [men] swa saye, euen so deylyne he conquerid it & broghte it vnder his subieccio. And fra Affric he went by Schippe til ane 20 Ile, 5at es called Frontides, for to consaile a godd 5at pry called Amon. And as Alexander & his men went to-war de 3 pe temple of pis for-said godd 5at pry mett in pe waye a grete hert 5at pe whilke Alexander had his mein sla wit arowes. And 8 Pry schott at hym; bot none of 8am myghte hitt hym. And 8am Alexander tuke a bowe & schotte at hym & hitt hym & slewe hym. And 8am Alexander went in-to pe temple, & made sacrafye of pis hert vn-to godd Amon, and by-soughte 28 hym 5at he schulde gyffe hym ansuare. When Alexander hade made his prayers pare to godd Amon, he went wit his Oste in-till a place 5at highte Taphoresey, In pe whilke were seftene 3 gude townnes, & pry hade twelue grete rers 5at rane in-to 32 pe see, and at pe entree of 8am in-to pe see pare was drawen ouer grete chynes of yryne, and thare Alexandir made Sacrafice till his godde3. And on pe same nyghte, a godd 5at [hight] Serapis apperid vn-till hym in his slepe, cledd in riche 36 clothynge in ane horrible forme & a dredefull, and said vn-till
The Vision of Serapis; Anectanabus’s image.

hym. ‘Alexander,’ quo\(\text{p}\) he, ‘may pou take pis montayne on \(\text{p}\) schulder & bere it a-way?’ Quo\(\text{p}\) Alexander, ‘how myghte any man do \(\text{p}\)at?’ And Serapis answerd & said, ‘righte as pis montayne saif neuer wit-owten *end be removed* hethein, so thi name & thi dedes schaft be made mynde of to the worlde end.’ And tha\(\text{n}\) Alexander prayed hym \(\text{p}\)at he walde prophycye hym what kyns dede he scholdie die. Serapis answerd and said; ‘It es noghte spef\(\text{u}\)ff till a man to knawe his payneful endynge. For if he knewe it, peraunture, he scholde neuer hafe loye in his hert. Neuer \(\text{p}\)e lesse bi-cause pou hase prayede me to telle \(\text{p}\)e, I saf say the. After a drynke pou schaft take thi dede. For in thi southe \(\text{p}\)ou saft make thy\(\text{u}\) endynge. Bot spirre me noper \(\text{p}\)e tyme ne \(\text{p}\)e houre when it schal be, For I wiff on na wyse tette it to the. For-whi godde\(\text{g}\) of \(\text{p}\)e este partie\(\text{g}\) of \(\text{p}\)e werlde saft tette the ale thi werde\(\text{g}\).’ Whene Alexander wakken\(\text{e}\) of his dreme, he was reghte heuy, and sent \(\text{p}\)e maste substance of his Oste to \(\text{p}\)e Cite of Askalow and ball \(\text{p}\)an habide hym thare, and hym selfe & a certane of menge wit hym habade & thare he garte make a Citee & called it Alexander afer his awen\(\text{u}\) name.

1 In the mene tyme \(\text{p}\)e Egipciens herd\(\text{f}\) of \(\text{p}\)e comynge of Alexander, & pay went agaynes hym & submytt \(\text{p}\)an vn-tiff hym & resayffled hym wirchipfully. And when Alexander came in-tiff Egipte, he fand ane ymage of a kyng made of blake stane curiously coruen\(\text{d}\), and he askede \(\text{p}\)e Egipciens whase ymage it was, and pay answerd & said; ‘It es \(\text{p}\)e ymage,’ quo\(\text{p}\) pay, ‘of Anectanabus that was kyngye of Egipte noste lange sytte\(\text{d}\) gane, \(\text{p}\)e wyseste & \(\text{p}\)e worthiest \(\text{p}\)at enuer was \(\text{p}\)are-\(\text{i}\)n\(\text{d}\).’ For sothe quo\(\text{p}\)\(\text{g}\) Alexander, ‘Anectanabus was my Fader.’ And \(\text{p}\)an he kneid down with grete reuerence & kyssyd \(\text{p}\)e ymage. Fra thethyn\(\text{d}\) he went wit his Oste to Surry. But \(\text{p}\)e Surriens agayne-stude\(\text{g}\) hym and faghte wit hym and slewe many of his knyghtes. Neuer \(\text{p}\)e lesse Alexander had \(\text{p}\)e victorye. And \(\text{p}\)an he went to Damaske, & Ensegge\(\text{d}\) \(\text{p}\)e ymage. Fra thethyn\(\text{d}\) he went to Sydon \(\text{p}\)e wanne it, and fra thethyn\(\text{d}\) he went to Sydon \(\text{p}\)e wanne it. And \(\text{p}\)an he went vnto \(\text{p}\)e Citee of Tyre and layde Ensegge abowte it, and [in] \(\text{p}\)is Ensegge he laye many a day. And thare

*Leaf 4 bk.

Serapis foretells him his last fame, his deeds, his death. But of some things Serapis may not speak.

Alexander awakens saddened. He sends his main strength on to Askalow. Where he was he founded the city of Alexandria.

The Egyptians hearing of his coming submit. He sees the image of Anectanabus.

He acknowledges Anectanabus as his father.

He invades Syria, takes Damascus, Sidon, and sets about the siege of Tyre.

1 Five half lines space for miniature I. 2 quo\(\text{p}\) Alexander in margin. 3 Scribe wrote agaynesande and altered it to agaynestude.
Tyre resists stoutly, and he has to set a boom across the haven.

* Leaf 5.

Alexander sends for help to Judas, Bishop of the Jews, and also demands tribute.

The Bishop pleads the oath of fealty sworn to Darius.

Alexander swears to wreak vengeance on the Jews.

He sends Melager with 500 men to Josaphat to forage. They defeat the Lord of the country and slay him.

But the Lord of the city sends help and

his Oste suffred many dysses. For that Cite was so strange in it-selfe by-cause of pe ground, pat it was sett apoi, and by-cause of grete towres & many pat ware abowe it, and also because it was so enclosed wit the see pat it myghte noghte lightly * be wonnen by nane assawte. Alexander pañ vmbi-thoughte hym, one what wyse he myghte best come to for to destroy pis citee, and he gerte make a grete bastell of tree, and sett it apoi schippes in pe see euere forgaynes pe cete, so pat pe myghte no shippe come nere the haue for to vetaille pe Citee or suppooeit wit mete by-cause of pe bastelle. In pe mene tyme Alexander Oste hade grete defawte of vetaylis, and pañ he sent lettres vnto Iadus, pat at that tyme was 12 bispoppes & gouernoure of pe Iewes, and prayede hym for to suppooeit hym wit sow men, and also pat he walde send sum vetals for hym & his Oste, and he schold pe pay for pañ wit a glade chere, and pat he scholde also send hym the tribute 16 pat he scholde gyffe Darius pe emperour of Perse. For hym ware better, he said, hafe his frenchipe pañ pe frenchipe of Darius. The Bispopes pañ of pe Iewes ansuered pe messangers pat broghte hym pe lettres & said, 'I hafe,' quop he, 'made athe to Darius, pat, whils he lefes, I schall neuer bere armes agaynes hym, and purefore I ne may noyte do agaynes my Athe.' The Messagers pañ went till Alexander & talde hym pe bispopes answere, and he was greued & said, 'I make myñ avowe,' quop he, 'vutilioure goddes, pat I schall take swilke vengeance on pe Iewes pat I sañ make pañ to knawe, whether it es better to pañ to be obstaient vn-to [my?] commandement, or vn-to pe kynges of Perse.' And he callede a duke, pat highte 28 Melager, and wit vc men of armes, and badd pañ gaa in to pe Oste of Josaphat, pe whilke was full of bestes & brynge of these bestes to pe Oste for to vetaille pañ wit. And ane Sampson, pat knewe pe cuntre wele was paire gyde. Pay went in to pe 32 vale, and gadird to gedir catelli wit-owte nombr & be-gan for to dryse on pañ. And he pat was lorde of pe cuntre, Theosellas bi name, raysed a grete multitude of folke and mett pañ & faughte wit pañ & slewe many of pañ. Bot Melager & his 36 felaws at pat tym had pe better. And ane pat highte Caules went baldly to Theosellas, & smate of his heued. Aft this was done bot a littill fra pe citee of Gadir. And pañ Bertyne,
The siege of Tyre.

lorde of þe citee, seand this, was grely styrred and ischewedede owte of þe citee & wit xxx feghtyng men ð and sett vp a schowe apoon the * Macedoynes alle at anes, that alle þe erthe trembled
4 wit-alle. And when þe Macedoyns saw that grete multytyde of folke con apoon þam, þay were reyte ferde. And þan Melagere walde hafe sent a Messangere to þaire lorde Alexander, for to come & socoure þam, bot he mygte fynde na maun þat 8 walde vndertake þe Message. Than thir two batalles met Sameñ & faughte to-gedir, and thare was Sampson slaen, and Bertyne. And þe Macedoyns wit þe grete multytyde of þaire enemys ware dreuened abakke, and lyke for to be dreuened 12 abakke & discomfites. And ane of þe grekkes, þat highte Arttes, seyng þe meschefe þay stode In, wan þ hym owte of the Bataile & went in alle þe haste, þat he myghte, tiit Alexander & talde hym þat þe Grekkes & þe Macedoynes ware in poynte 16 to be mescheuede, bot if he suppoeldde þam þe tittere. And than Alexander lefte þe segge of Tyre, and went wit his Oste to þe vale of Iosaphat, and fand þis meen riȝte harde by-stadle wit þaire enemys. And he and his Oste vmbylapped alle þaire enemys, and daunge þam down & slewe þam ilke a moder soñ. And when he had so done he turned agayne vn-to Tyre, and made the Bastelle, þat he hade made in þe See, dongen downe to þe grounde. For alsow als Alexandere was 24 gane fra Tire to þe vale of Iosaphat, Balan þat was lorde of Tyre ischewed oute of þe citee wit thee folke þære-of, & assailed the bastel manfully, and tuke it & dare it doune. And when Alexander sawe that, he was grely angerde, and his hert 28 wonder heuy, and so ware alle þe Macedoynes and the Grekes. In so meketh þay ware nerehand in dispeire for to wyn þe citee, and ware in poynte to hafe rifen1 up þe segge. And one þe nyghte nexte suande, Alexander, als he laye & slept, 32 dremyde þat he had in his hand a grape, þe whilke hym thoughte he keste downe vnder his fete, and trad þære-one, 38 & alsone þære raw oute of it a grete dele of wyne. And when Alexander wakned, he called tilit hym a Philosophre & talde 36 hym his dreme. And þe Philosophre anseruerde, 'be balde,' quop he, ' & lefe noȝte to ensegge Tyre, for þe grape þat þou the Macedo- donians are driven back. * Leaf 5 bk.

One of the
Greeks sends for help to Alexander, who, leaving the siege of Tyre, outflanks the enemy of Josaphat and slays them all.

Alexander, returning to Tyre, finds his boom thrown down, for Balan had sorted with all his people. So despairing are the Greeks that they almost give up the siege.

The next night Alexander dreams a dream and, when his

1 MS. rissen, perhaps for jissen, but the same idiom is found elsewhere.
Alexander dreams a dream and conquers Tyre.

Philosopher interprets it, he cheered.

* Leaf 6.
He makes another boom on ships higher than the highest city tower. He directs his men how to attack.

Cutting the cables he lets the towers over the boom float in up on the city. He, climbing the walls, slays Balan, and his followers rush all at once into the city. Tyre is destroyed.

Alexander takes Gaza and marches on Jerusalem. The Bishop of the Jews, hearing this, calls the Jews before him, and orders fasting, prayer, and sacrifice.

An Angel

1 The y of hyn for hym is written over another letter scratched out.

2 Twelve half lines space with miniature of a Q.
after, when pe Bischoppe hadd made his sacrifisce, and was
lyand in prayers, he felt on slomeryng and ane Angelle appered
vu-tiff hym, and sayd, 'Be noste ferd,' quo p he, 'bot swythe
4 gere arayy honestly att pe streytsis of (pe) citee, and caste open
the gates, and warne att pe folke pat pay aray amy in whitte
clethynge, and thi-selfe & alre pe prestis reueste3 sow solenmpnely,
and to-morne arcly wende3 furthe of pe citee agaynes Alexander
8 in processioun. For hym by-houe3 * regne & be lorde of alre
pe werlde. Bot at pe tste pe wrethe of gode salf falle apo3
hym.' When pe bischoppe' wakened' of his slepe, he called tiff
hym pe iewes and talde pay his renelacion, and bad pay do
12 att als pe Angelle hade schewed hym. And pay diid so. For
pay arayed pe stretye3 of pe citee and cledde pay amy in whitte
clethynge, and the Bischope & pe prestis reueste pay amy, and
bathe thay and alle pe folke went furthe of pe citee tiff a place
16 whare pe temple & att pe citee may be seeni. And bare pay
habade pe comyngye of Alexander. And whei Alexander come
were pis foresaid place, and sawe be-for hym swilke a multitude
of folke, cled atte in whitte, and pe presti3 arayed solenmpnely
19 in riche vestymentes, and pe byschope also in his pontyfylkales
and a mytir one his heued; and bare-amo3 a plate of golde,
whare-one was wretyn pe name of grete godd Tetragramatou, he
comaundad att his mei3 pat pay schulde halde pay amy by-hynde
24 hym, and habide tiff he com to pay. And he lighte off his
horse, and went bi hym ane to pe iewes, And knelid dow3 to
pe erthe and wirchippede pe hye name of godd, pat he saw
bare wretyn apo3 pe bishopshe heued. And pay alle pe iewes
28 knelid dow3 & saluste Alexander and cried att wtt a voyce:
'lyff lyffe,' quo p pay, 'grete Alexander, lyffe, lyffe the gretteste
Emperour of pe werlde, lyffe he pat saI ouer-comi att mei3 and
no3te be ouercomen3. Prynce maste gloriuous and maste worthy
of att pe prince3 pat regne3 apo3 erthe.' When pe kyng3 of
Surry saw pis, pay hadd grete wonder pare-off. And a pryncye
of Alexanders, pat highte Parmeno3, said vu-tiff Alexander:
'Mi lorde pe Emperour,' quo he, 'we mervelle vs gretely pat
32 bow, wham amy mei3 wirchippe3 and lowte3, wirchippe3 here pe
bischope of pe iewes.' And Alexander answered, 'I wirhippe
no3te hym,' pis quo he, 'Bot Godd, whase state he presente3.
For when I was in Macedoyne, and ymbithoghete me, oiw what
of the Lord appears by
night to
the High
Priest and
shows him
how the
city may
be freed—
and utters
a prophecy.
* Leaf 68 bk.
The Bishop
awakens,
and, doing
as the
Angel bids,
he and his
people go
forth to
meet Alex-
ander, the
folk in
white, the
Bishop in
full Pontif-
icals.
Alexander,
seeing
them, dis-
mounting,
knocks and
worships
the Name
of God.

Alexander,
Alexander worships Jehovah.

wyse I myste conquere Assye, I saw hym aleand, in swilk habite & in swylke araye; and he lete as he sett noyte by me, but went baldely furthe bi me. And for I see nane in swilk arraye bot hym, I suppose it be he pat I saw in my slepe. 4 And pare-fore I tryowe pat thurgh þe helpe of God he swaff overcom Daryus, þe kyng of Perse, and his grete pryde fordo. And alþ thynges þat I caste in my hert for[r] to do, it es my full triste þat thurgh his helpe I saff fullfiff it, and wele bryng 8 to it end. And þis es þe cause I wirchipped hym. And when he hadd said these wordes, he went in-to þe citee witt þe bischope & þe prestes, and went in-to þe temple þat Salamoun made. And as þe bischope teched hym he offerde 12 sacrifice vn-to Godd. And þe bischope tuke Alexander in hande a buke of þe prophicye of Daniel, * in þe whilke he fande wretyn, pat a mañ of Grece sulde distruy þe powere of Perse. 2 And Alexander was reghte gladde, supposynge þat it was hym-selfe. And þad he gaffe þe bischope & þe oper prestes; grete gyftes & riche & precyous, And badd þe bischope ashe of hym what so he walde. And the bischope askede þat he walde giffe þam leue to vse þe same lawes þat paire 20 faderes vset before þam, and he graunte it. And þam þe bischope askede þat 3 walde giffe þe Iewes þat ware in Medee & in Babylonye, leue for to vse þaire lawes, & he graunted hym þat & alþ oper thynges þat he walde aske.

4 Alexander thau went fra Jerusalem, & leite thare Andromac his Messagere, and hym selve & his Oste went to þe oper citee þat ware in þe lande of Judee, and at ilke a citee þat he come to, he was wirchipfully ressayued. In þe mene tyme þe 28 Surryens þat fledd fra Alexander, went to Perse, and talde þe emperour Darius how Alexander hadd done to þam. And Darius spired þaynd of his stature & of his schappe, and þay schewed hym portrayed in a parchemynd skymé þe ymage of 32 Alexander. And alsone als Darius sawe it, he dispyset Alexander bycause of his littiiff stature, and be-lyfe he gerte

1 MS. see nane twice over; 'see nane, see nane.'
2 A more open handwriting begins most clearly after Perse.
3 Supply he between pat and walde.
4 Eleven half lines space for a minia-

1 20 24
write a lettre and sent it till Alexander. And pare-wit he sent hym a handbalf & oper certane Iape3 in scorne. And pis is pe tenour of pe lettre pat he sent till hym.

Darius, kyng of kynges, and lord of all vertuely lorde euen like unto sonne schychalde, wit pe godde3 of Perse, vntill Alexander oure servaund we send. We hafe vnderstanden now on late, whare-of we menuelle vs gretely, pat jou ert so raysed in pride and vayne glorie, pat jou base sempled togedir a company of robbourz and thefe3 oute of pe weste partes, and caste3 pe for to co[n] in-tilt oure partes3, supposynge thurgh 3am to for to ouer-sett and constreyne pe grete myghte & pe virtue of pe perecyns, whose strengthe jou may neuer sloked ne ouercome, suppose jou gadirdel & sembled togedir all pe werlde. For I do pe wele to wiete jou myghte merehand alsonne nommer pe sternes of heuen, as pe folke of pe empire of Perse. Oure godde3 also, by whayn all pis werlde es governed & suste[n]ed, prayse3 & commende3 oure name passyng all oper nacyons. 'Bot no3te wit-standynge pis; jou as a littill bios & a dwergh, a halfe man & ort3 of alle men, desyrand to oner-passe pi littillnes, rizte as a mouse crepe3 oute of hir hole, so jou ert crepe3 out of pe lande of Sethyst, wenynge wit a few rebawde3 to conquere & optene pe lande3 of Perse brade & lange, & to ryotte & playe the in thayn as mysses doune in pe house whare na cattes ere. Bot I pat pruualy hase aspiied thi gate3, when jou wene3 moste seurely for to sterlere abowe, I salt sterle apoyn & take pe; & so in wretchednes salt thi dayes fowly hase an ende. 'A grete Foly jou dide for to take apoyn the swylke a presupemyon. It ware fulf faire to pe, if jou myghte bi oure lefe, wit oure benevolence, occupie all anely be rewe of Macedoyne, yenynge parefore till vs cerely a certane tribute, if all pou coueti3 noste oure empire. Pare-foure it es gode pat jou lafe thi fonned purposs, and wende hame agayne, and sett the in thi moder knee. And lo, I sende the here a littill balle, wit pe whilke als a childe jou may play the. For jou ert bot a childe. It es mare semely pat jou vse child3 gamme3 pan 36 dede3 of armes. 'We knawe wele thi pouert and thi nede, and

1 Darius writes to Alexander, telling him how he heares heard of his band of theves and robbers, and that they could never overcome the power of Persia.

4 Leaf 7 bk.

He tells Alexander of his meannes and wretchedness who wishes, like some mouse crept out of her hole when the cat is gone, to dispart him in the broad lands of Persia. But Darius shall sconde upon him when least awaited. It were a great gift to leave him Macedoyna alone, under tribute. He had better go home to his mother’s knee. He sendes him a play ball as more becomenig him.

1 Four half lines and miniature D with a king’s head within.
2 At bottom of leaf 7, first side, are written in large characters kyckyn ye alt u Ryo...
Alexander and the ambassadors of Darius.

Does Alexander dream of subduing the rich Empire of Persia. He advises him to return home again or he will send a force to hang him as a thief on a gibbet.

The messengers deliver Alexander the ball and the letters. His knights, hearing it read, are astounded and cast down.

* Leaf 8.

Alexander consoles his men with the hope that what Darius says of the wealth of Persia may be true, and he exhorts them to fight for it manfully.

He bids his knights bind the messengers and lead them forth to be hanged. They lead them forth thus, but the messengers beg for mercy. Alexander tells them why he

\[ \text{pat } \text{pou hase vnnethes where wit } \text{pou may sustene thi catyfde corse. Wene3 pou, than, to brynge vnder thi subiecion th the empyre of Darius. I say the by my Fader saule, pat in the rewme of Perse } \text{pare es so grete plente of golde, pat, } & \text{it were 4 gadirde to gedir on a hepe, It schulde passe } \text{pe clerenes of } \text{pe s0n. Whare-fore we commande the, and straitely enjoyne3 the, pat } \text{pou leue thi folpe pride and thi vayne glory, } & \text{toure hame agayne to Macedyne. And if } \text{pou wif nupte soo, we saifi sende 8 to } \text{pe a multitude of mei3 of armes swilke ante saw } \text{pou neuer, } \text{pe whilke safft take } \text{pe, and hynge } \text{pe hye oon a gebett as a traytour and a mayster of theef3: and nofte as } \text{pe son of Philippe.'}

1 When pe messangers pat were sent fra Darius come to 12 king Alexander, pay gaffe hym the lettres, and pe.balle & oper certane Iapes, pat pe emperour sent hym in scorne. And Alexander tuke pe lettres, and gert rede it openly by-fore alle mei3, and Alexander knyghtes when pe herde } \text{pe tenour of } \text{pe 16 lettres were gretly astonayde and wonder heuy. And when Alexander sawe pay so heuy by cause of } \text{pe lettre, he saide vnto pay: 'a a, my worthy knyghtis,' quo3 he, 'are 3e fered } \text{for pe prowde word3 pat are contenf in Darius lettres, wate 3e 20 noghte wele pat hunde3, pat berkes } * \text{mekift, byet3 mei3 noghte so sone, als doe3 hundes pat commenne3 one mei3 wit-outten berkynghe. We trewe wele } \text{pe lettre says sothe of some thyng3e, pat es to } 2 \text{saye, of } \text{pe grete plente of golde, pat Darius sais he } 24 \text{hase. And parefore late vs manly seghte wit hym and we saif hafe pat golde. For } \text{pe grete multitude of his golde, als me thynke, schulde gare vs be balde and hardly for to fighte wit hym manly.'}

When Alexander haft saide thir word3e he bade his knyghtis take the messangers of Darius and bynd3 parie hunde3 bi-hynde paym, } & \text{led paym furthe to the galowes, } & \text{hynge paym. And pay tuke pe messangers } & \text{bande paym, and began for to lede 32 paym furthe to pe galowes-warde, and paym pe messengers bigan for to crye rewfully vntil3 Alexander } & \text{sayd: 'A, A wirchipuff lorde } & \text{kynge', quo3 pay, 'whate hafe we trespaste, pat we schaff be haungede for oure kynge dedis.' And paym kynge 36 Alexander ansered: 'pe worde3 of your Empeour', quo3 he, 'gers me do pis, pat sent 30w vn-to me, as vnto a theeffe, as } \text{pe}

1 Five half lines space with a miniature W. 2 to in margin of MS.
The letter of Alexander to Darius.

Alexander, the son of Philippe & of dwene Olympias, vn-to Darius, kynge of þe land pat schyne5 wit þe godde3 of Perse, we sende. If we graythely & sothefastly be-halde ourse selfe pare es na thynge þat we here hafe þat we may bi righte calle ours, bot all it es lent vs for a tyme. For affe we þat ere whirled aboute wit þe whele of fortune, now ere we broghte fra reches in-to pouertie : now fra myrthe & ioy in-to Sorowe & heunynes ; & agaynwarde3 : & now fra heghte, we are plungede in-to lawnesse. Pare-fare pare schulde na maui þat es sett in hye degré triste to mekiill in his hyenesse, that, through pride & vayne glorye, he schulde despysye þe dedis of oper men lese * pan he. For he wate neuer how some þe whele of fortune may turne abowte, and caste hym doune to lawe degree, þat sitteþ hye on-holfe : & rayse hym to hye wirchipe and grete noblaye þat bifoire was pore and in lawe degree. And pare-fare the aughte to thynke grete schame, þat swilke a worthy emperour as men halde the, schulde sende swylke will hang them. They promise to make known to Darius Alexander's real character. King Alexander, loosing them, bids them come to meat. They propose to Alexander that they should deliver Darius into his hands. He scornfully rejects it. The letter.

-ette while þe broghte witnesse3: 'A, A lorde', quoþ pay, 'oure emperour sent1 thus to you: for your powere & your myghte was unknawwen vn-till hym. But we be-seke 30w late3 vs gaa, and we sacht mak aknawen vn-till hym your grete glory, your ryalte, & your noblaye.'

Pan kyng Alexander baddi his knyghtis lowse þam, and bryng þam in-till his haufe, to þe mete. And thare he made þam a grete feste & a ryaft. And as pay satt at the mete, þir messangers saide vn-till Alexander, 'lorde,' quoþ pay, 'if it be plesyng to your hye mai estee sende with vs a thousand of doghty men of armes, and we saft deluyer þam þe Empyre Darius,' and Alexander ansuerde agayne & said2 'Sittes stitle', quoþ he, ' & makes 3ow mery. For I telt 3ow in certayne, for þe betrayinge of your kyng, I will noghte grant 3ow a knyghte wit 3ow.' Apon þe morn, Alexander gart write a lettre vn-to Darius, whareoff þe teuour was this.

1 sent in margin of MS.
2 & said in margin.
3 The rubric is wrongly placed in the MS. after dignytes, p. 24, i.e. at the end of the letter.
4 Five half lines with miniature A.
5 schyens in margin of MS.
The war begins.

man, behoves so to Alexander, a little man.
The Undying Gods do not associate with men that die. Alexander comes as a mortal man to fight Darius. Even if Darius overcame Alexander he shall win nothing by it, for he is but a little man and a thief. Darius's boasts of the Persians of old have heartened them to attack the Empire. The play ball that was sent was also a forecast of his rule over the world. The other toys likewise foretell his rule over all men. By the same, Darius has sent tribute to Alexander.

The letter is taken to Darius. He then marches on Persia.

* Leaf 9.

Darius, receiving a message unto me so liddill a man and so pore. For thou ert even lyke to be some, as thi selfe says, sittande in pe trone of Nitas wt pe godde3 of Perse. Bot godde3 pat euermare are, liffaunde & neuermare dye3, deyne3 noste for to hate pe sela-4 chipe of dedely men. Sekery I am a dedely man; and to pe I come as to a dedely man, for to feghte wifu the. Bot thou pat arte so grete & so glorious & calle3 thi selfe vnvedely, thou salt wynne na thynge of me, if aHe thou hate pe ouerhande of me. 8 For thou hate overcommen bot a liddill man, and a thee[3] als thou sayse. And if I hate pe ouerhande ouer the, It salt be to me pe gretteste wirchipe pat euere byfeli me, for als mekild als I salt hate pe victoye of pe worsthieste emperour of pe werlde. Bot 12 pare thou salde, pat, in pe reume of Perse, es so grete plentee of golde, thou hate scharpede oure herti3, and made mare balde for to feghte with the; & for to wynne pat golde; for to relefe oure pouerte wit-all, & putte awaye our nede whilke 16 thou says we hate. In pat also, pat thou sent vs a hande-baflé and ope3 barne-laykynes, pou prophicyed rihte, and betak[3] bi-sore, thynes pat we trewe, thurgh godde3 helpe, salt faillé vn-till vs. By pe roundenes of pe baflé, we vnderstande 20 all the werlde aboute vs, pe whilke salt faillé vnder oure subieccion. Bi pe tane of pe laykaines pat thou sent vs, pe whilke es made of wande3 and crukse3 donwarde3 at pe ouerend; we vnderstand pat ait pe kynges of pe werlde, and ait pe grette lorde3, 24 salt lowte till vs. Bi pe toper layka[3], pat es of golde, and hate apon it, as it ware, a manne3 hede, we vnderstande pat we salt hate pe victoye of ait men and neuer be overcommen. And thou pat ert so grete & so myghty hase now onwarde3 sent 28 vs trybute, in als mekild als thou sent vs a handa-baflé, and pir ope3 thynes pat I rehersed by-sore, the whilke contene3 in pa3 so grete dignytes.'

1 When pis lettre was wret[n], Alexander called till pe mes-sangers of pe Emperour of Perse, and gaffse pam rich[e gyftes and betuke pam pe lettre, and bad[n] pam bere it to paire lorde. And pam Alexander sembled his Oste, and by-gam for to wende towards Perse. When the messangers of Perse come to pe 36 emperour pây talde hym of pe grette ryalte of kyng Alexander * and take hym the letters pat Alexander sent hym. And

1 Four half lines space with miniature W.
Darius writes to his Sutraps.

pe emperour garte rede paum. And when he here redde he was wonder wrathe, and sent a lettre belyue vn-tiff tva grete lorde; that hadde pe gounernace of pe empire vnder hym sayand to pam on this wiese.

1 Darius kyng of kynges and lorde of lorde s vntiff oure trewe lege; Primus & Antiochus, gretynge and ioy. We here tell pat Alexander, Philippe some of Macedoyne, es so hege he rayseyde in pryde, pat he es rebelte agaynes vs, & es commen in-tiff Asye, and hase distroyed; it vtterly. And zitt hym thynke noste this yneghe, bot he purpose; hym for to come nere vs, and do pe same tiff operre cuntre; of oure empire as he hase done tyli

12 Asye. Where-fore we comande 3owe o payne of your legance, pat ze semble pe grete meiow & pe worthy of oure empyre, wit oper of our trewe lege; and, in al pe haste pat ze may, gase & counters zone childe, takand hym, and bryngand hym bi-fore oure presence, pat we may lasche hym wee, als a wantow childe schulde be: and clethe hym in purpoure; & so send hym tiff his moder Olympias wee chastyede. For it seme; noste to be a feghter: but for to vse childe ganne.

16 Thire twa lorde s Primus and Antiochus, when pay hadde redde this lettre of pe emperour, pay wrate agayne vntiff hym on this wyse. 'Vn-to Darius, kyng of kynges, grete godd; Primus & Antiochus, seruye pat pay kaD do. To your hege

20 maieste we make it aknawen, pat pe childe Alexandere, whilke ze speke off, hase aff vtterly distroyed your cuntre. And we sembled a grete multiytude of folke, and faughte wit hym; but he hase descomfit vs, and we were fayne for to flee. For un-

24 nethe myghte any of vs wynne awaye wit pe lyfe. Pare-fore we pat ze say ere helpers vnto 3owe, besek pe 3our hye maiestee that ze send sunow socoure tiff vs 3our trewe leges.' When Darius hadde redde pis lettre, pare come anoper messanger tiff hym and talde hym pat Alexander and his Oste hade lngede pam appon the water of Strume. And when Darius herD pat he wrate anoper lettre vntiff Alexander, of whilke pis was pe tenour.

36 Darius, kyng of kynges, and lorde of lorde s, vn-tiff oure servand Alexander. Thorowte aff pe werlde pe name of Alexander's letter, writes to his two great lords, telling them of Alexander's boldness and bidding them take him prisoner so that Darius may whip him as a naughty child and send him home to his mother.

Primes and Anti-

Darius is told of the camping of Alexander on the river Strume.

Darius writes again to

1 Space for four lines.
2 Miniature and M space for four lines.
3 Four half lines and space with a miniature D, with king's head within.
Darius, pat in' and it, & 2 me thynke it * ware to pe, if pou myghte mawgre ours, hate in possession of the kyngdome of Macedoyne. anely, wit-owtten mare. Thare-fore the es better amend of thi myssededis, pan we take swilke wreke appoîn the, * pat ofer men* take bisme pare- 8 by, see afte pe erthe wit-owtten oure lordchip, may be caldewed. Torne agayne pare-fore, we consaile pe, in-to thyw awendi cunteere, are oure wrethe and oure wreke fafe apon pe. Neuer-pe-lesse, pat oure wirchippe & oure grete nobluye 12 be suuzwhate knaawaî to pe, we sende the a malefuit of cheseboffe sede, in takennen ng pare-of. Luke if pou may nombir & tefte afi pir cheseboffe sede3, & if pou do pat pari may pe folke of oure oste be nowmerî. And if pou 16 may nojte do pat oure folke may nojte be nowmerî. Pare- for turnee hame agayne in-to pi cunteere and lefe pi foly pat pou hase bygûn, and take na mare apon pe swilke a presumpcion, for I teff pe we haffe men of armes wit-outen 20 nowmmere'.

1 Where pe Messangers of Darius come till Alexander, pay tuk hym pe lettre and pe malefuit of cheseboffe sede, Alexander pari gerte rede pe letter. And sytheî he putt 24 his hand in pe male, and tuke of pe cheseboffe sede3 & putt in his mouth, & chewed it, & said; 'I see wele', quop he, 'pat he hase many men, bot pay are rijte softe as this sede3 are'. In pe mene tyme pare come a Messanger till Alexander fra 28 Macedoyme: and talde hym pat his Moder Olympias was greie seke. And [when] Alexander herî pis, he was wonder heuy. Neuer pe lesse, he wrate vn to Darius a lettre, pat spakke on this wyse.

2 Alexander pe soû of Philippe & of qwene Olympias vn-to Darius kyng of Perse, we sende. We do pe wele to wiete pat we hafe herde certane tythynge3, whilke gers vs agayne3 oure wiff do pat we now salt saye. Bot trow pou noîte pat we 36 for ferre or dowte of thi pride and pi wayne glorye turne hame agayne now till oure awendi cunteere, Bot aff anely for to vesett

Darius es prayed & commended. Oure goddez also haze it wreteñ in thaire bukes. How than durste pou be so balde, for to passe so many waters, and see3, Mountaynes & cragge3, for to werraye agaynes oure royalle maiestee. A grete wirchip 4

* Leaf 9 blk.

They bring Alexander the letter. But he finds another meaning for the tokens. He hears of the heavy sickness of his mother. Altho' cast' down by the news he writes a letter to Darius. He tells him that for other reasons he is forced unwillingly to return, but bids him not put it

1 Four lines space with miniature W. 2 Three lines space.
The Persians defeated in three days' battle.

27

oure Moder Olympias, whilke lygges grece seke. Bot wete þou wele, wit in schorte þyn, we schall haste vs agayne, wit a grete nowmere of fresche knyghtis. And rȝte als þou sent vs a maleful of chessebolle sedeʒ; so we sende þe here a litleit peper. For þou schulde witte þat rȝte as þe scharpenes of þis litleit peper passt þe multitude of þe chessebolle sedeʒ, rȝte so þe grete multitude of þe Persyenes salt be ouer-comen wit a fewe

8 knyghtis of Macedoyne.'

'This lettre be-kende Alexander to þe knyghtis of Darius, þe peper also, & bad þaþi bere þaþi to þe emperour. And he gaff þaþi grete gyftes and riche, and sent þaþi furthe. And þaþi he turnede * agayne wit his Oste towards Macedoyne.

There was þe same tyme a wonder wyse maþ of werre þe whilke highte Amoreca, and he was pryncy-werres in Araby, and lay þare wit a grete multitude of men in awayte of

16 Alexander & his Oste. And when he herde tell of þe commynig of Alexander, he redied hym for to kepe hym. And when þay mett, þay faught to-geder all þe daye fra þe morne till þe enen. And so þay dide all þe day þree dayes. And þare was so mekill

20 folke dede in pat bataile, þat þe sone weye eclipte & wit-drew his lighte, vggande for to see so mekill scheddyngue of blude. Bot at laste þe Percyenes were so thikke-falde fellit to þe grounde, þat þaire pryncy Amoreca turned þe bakke & fellit;

24 and vanetheþ myghte wynþ awaye, and a fewe wit hym.

So hastily fellit Amoreca, þat he come nerehand alsone to Darius, as his messengers did þat come fra Alexander, and fand Darius haldand þe lettre in his hande, þat Alexander sent hym, and spirrande what Alexander did wit þe chessebolle sedeʒ. And þe messengers ansuerd & said: 'He tuke of þe chessebolle sedeʒ, quop þay, and chewed of þaþi, & said: I see wele, quop he, 'þat Darius hase many men, bot þay are wonder softe';

28 And than Darius tuk of þe peper, þat Alexander sent, and putt in his mouthe and chewed þat. And when he felide þe strenghe of it, and þe grete hete, he syghede sare, and saide: 'Alexander knyghtis', quop he, 'are bot fewe, bot and þay be als strange in þaþi selfe, as þis peper es in it selfe, þay salt fynde nane in þis werle þat may agaynestande þaþi.' And þan ansuerde Amoreca & saide, 'Forsothe, lord', quop he, 'þe

down to his own vainglory or pride. He shall come again with a fresh host. And he sends him in return a little pepper. He dispatches Darius's messengers back with the letter. * Let to, Amoreca tries to ambuscade Alexander.

They fought three whole days till the sun grew dark with dread, seeing the number of the slain. So many of the Persians were slain that at last Amoreca had to flee. He fled so quickly to Darius that he found him reading Alexander's letter. Darius sighs at the sharpness of the pepper.

1 Five lines space with miniature A.
The return; second campaign against Persia.

say sothe, Alexander have few knyghtis, but pay ere strange, pat hase slaen my knyghtis pat ware so many, so pat\(^1\) vnnethe, myghte I eschappe owte of paire hande.\(^2\) Alexander, if alle he hade pe victorye of his enemys, he bare hym neuer pe hiere pare-fore, ne empride hym note pare-of. Bot bathe Percycene & the Macedoyns pat ware slaen, he gert brynge to beryff. And pa\(\hat{w}\) he come wit his Oste in-to Ceciff, where many Cite\(\hat{e}\) submyt pa\(\hat{u}\) neff hym, and of that rewme, \(8\) pare went wit hym\(\hat{e}:\) xvij. M. feghtynge men. And fra thethy\(\hat{n}\) he come tiff Ysaury, pe whilke, wit-owttene any agayne standynge, was \(5\)oden vntill hym. And Alexander went vp apow pe Mounte Tauruse, and fande pare a citee pat men callede Persypolis, and thare he tak wit hym a certane of men of Armes, and went so thurgh Asye, and wain many Cite\(\bar{e}\). And so he come in-to Frigy, and went in-to pe temple of pe so\(\hat{n}\), and thare he made sacrifyce to pe so\(\hat{n}\). Fra thethy\(\hat{n}\), he come 16 to a reuere, pat es calle\(\hat{d}\) Stamandra, and pare he said tiff his men. *Blyste mote pe be,* \(\hat{\text{quop}}\) he, *pat hase getyn pe comendaciones & pe praysynges of pe gude docteur Homeruse*, and ane of his men ansuerde & said, \(\hat{\text{Mi lorde kyng, quop}}\) he, *Me thinke I may sauely writte ma praysynges, & lonynges of the, pa\(\hat{n}\) Homeruse did of pa\(\hat{n}\) pat destyrede pe Citee of Trayane. For pa\(\hat{n}\) hase done in pi tyme ma wirchipful thynge, pa\(\hat{n}\) euer did pa\(\hat{y}\).* And Alexander \(\hat{\text{ansuerd,}}\) & said, \(\hat{\text{Me ware leuer, quop}}\) he, *be a wyse manes discipline pa\(\hat{n}\) for to hafe pe lonynges of Achille\(\bar{e}\).* After this he remouede wit his Oste into Macedoyne, & fande his Modir Olympias wele courte\(\hat{d}\) of hir sekences, and suggournde pare wit her a while. 28 And than\(\hat{d}\) he ordeyned hym\(\hat{e}\) for to wende agayne into Persy, And keste hym\(\hat{e}\) for to logge at a Citee, pat men calle\(\hat{e}\) Abandry\(\bar{a}\). The men of pe Citee, when\(\hat{u}\) pay herde telle of his conmynges, pay sperede pe 3ates of pe Citee, and wachede pe citee one ilke a syde. And when Alexander saw pat, he went & assaillede pe Citee. And pe burge\(\bar{e}\) of pe Citee, when\(\hat{u}\) pay sawe pat pe citee was note strange yngoge of pe selfe, for to agaynstande pe assawte of paire enemys, pay criede tiff 36 Alexander & saide: *Kyng Alexander; quop pay, 'we spered'*

\(^1\) *pat* almost blotted out by stain in MS.

\(^2\) *alle* almost blotted out by same stain as above.
Alexander denounces the oracle of Apollo.

nogte pe 3ates of [the] citee to pat entent for to agaynestande the, Bot allanly for pe drede of Darius, kyng of Perse, pe whilke as it was tolde tiff vs, es purposede for to send his men hedir, for to destroye vs & oure citee.' And pat Alexander said vn to paen agayn. 'Iffie 3e will,' quopez he, 'pat we distruye 3owe noghte, openes your 3ates, and when I hafe made an ende wit Darius, pain saft I come agayne, & speke wit 3owe.' And paen pe Citazes opened pe 3ates. Fra thetheyd pay went to Connoliche. And fra thetheyd to Bihoi, and so to Caldiple. Syne pay come1 tiff a grete renerre, whare Alexander Oste had grete defante of vetaillis, and paen his knyghtis murmude gretely and said 'Oure horses, quopez pay, 'fayle3 vs ay mare & mare.' Alexander answerd, & said, 'A A, my doghty knyghtis,' quopez he, 'pat 3itt heder-towarde3 basse in werre3 suffred many perills & mekilt disesse, ere pe nowte in despeyre of your hele for pe failynge of your horses, Saft we nogte gete horses ynowe, and we lysse & hafe qwert, and if we dye we saft hafe na nede of horse, na pay may do us na prophete. Haste we ve pare-fore in aft pa maye to pe place where2 we saft gete horses wit-owten nowmer, and vetaillis also, bathe for oure selfe & for oure horses.' When he hadd'ali saide, pay went furthe and come tiff a place pat es called Luctus, pat es to saye wepyngue,** whar pay haue vetails ynoche, and mete ynoche for paire horse. Fra thetheyd pay removed & come tiff a place pat hatt Trigagantes, and pare pay hugged paen. And Alexander went in-to a temple of Apollo; where als he agh[it]ed to hafe made Sacrifice, and hafe hadd'ansuerre of that god's of certane thynge pat he waile hafe aschede. Bot a woman pat hitge saecora, whilke was preste of pat temple, talde Alexander pat paen was nogte pe tyme of ansuerre. On pe Morne Alexander come to pe temple & made his sacrifice. And Apollo said tiff Alexander, 'Hercules,' quopez he. And Alexander answered, & said, 'Now pat pou calle3 me Hercules,' quopez he: 'I see wele pat aft thyn answers ere false.' Fra thetheyn Alexander went till a citee pat es called Thebea, and said vn-to pe folke of pe citee: 'Sendez me furthe,' quopez he, 'four hundredth knyghtis, wele armed, for to wend wit

Alexander gets a lying answer of Apollo, who calls him Hercules.

1 MS. went crossed through by the scribe, and replaced by come in MS. itself.
2 where corrected from pare in MS.

29

Alexander's knights complain that their horses are failing them. Alexander exhorts them to endure to the end.

* Leaf 11.
Alexander destroys the Thebeans.

send him help. But they, refusing, shut their gates.

Alexander jeers at them.

He sends four thousand archers to shoot down the walls, a hundred to burn down the gates, and four hundred engineers to batter the walls in. Himself with the rest lay by to help them when necessary.

The story of Cicesterus and Hismon.

* Leaf 11 bk.

Alexander refuses mercy to the city, and rases it to the earth. Clitomarus, one of the citizens, fares away with the conquerors.

Thebeans ask vs in suppoellyng of vs. And when pe Thebeans herd thir wordes, pay spered pe 3ates of pe citee, for to agayne-stande Alexander, and went to pe walles, and crie pe lowe pe 3at Alexander myghte here: 'Alexander,' quo he, 'bot if [pou] gaa hethy frā vs, we 4 salt do the a velany, & thi knyttys also.' When Alexander herd this, he smyled & saide: '3e Thebeens,' quo he, 'pat erre so meki praysed & commended of strengh, Spere 3e your 3ates & sāse pe will feghte wit me; pare es na doghety man of armes 8 pat coutes for to haue wirchip & loos; pat will close hym within walles, but fighetes wit his enemys manly in pe felde.'

When he had saide thir wordes, he had pat four thousand archers sulde gaa abowte pe citee wit paire bowes, & lay apō 12 pān with arowes pat stode apō pe walles. And he had two hundreth men of armes ga to pe walles, and myne pān doune, and a hundreth he had take fyrebrandes, & gaa to pe 3ates & brynne pān. And he ordeynede oper foure hundreth men, 16 for to batt down pe walles wit Sewes of werre, Engynes and Goumes & oper maner of Instrumentes of werre. And hym seli, & pe remenant of peoste lay nere pān to socour pān when pe pay hadd nede. And belyfe fra pay hadd gyffe assawte to pe 20 citee, pe 3ates ware bryn, & meki folkes was slayne within pe citee, Suīn with arowes, suīn with stanes of Engynes; pe Fire also by-gān for to sett in house3 wit-in pe citee, & rayse a grete love. In pe Oste of Alexander was, pe same tyme, a man pe 24 whilke bighte Cicesterus, a grete enemy to pe citee. He, when he sawe pe citee bryn, made righte mery.* Bot a man of the citee pat highte Hismon, when he saw his cuntores pugsates be distrayed, come and selle one kennes be-fore Alexander; and 28 bigaid for to synge a sange of Musyke & of murnyne wit an Instrument of Musike, Supposyng pare-by for to drawe Alexander herte to Mercy, & styrrre hym to hafe rewthe on pe citee. Alexander be-helde hym, & sayde: 'Maister,' quo he, 'whare-32 to synge3 pou me pistolsunge?' 'A A lorde,' quo Hismon, 'to luke zife I my3te styrrre pe herte to hafe mercy on pe citee.' And pe pay Alexander was wonder wrath, and bad dynge pe walles of pe cete doun to pe harde erthe. And wheī pe pay had so done 36 pay remoued & went paire way, and ane of pe worthieste men of pe citee, pe whilke hyghte Clitomarus, went wit pān in company. Bot pe Thebeens pat ware lefte aftire pe birmyng
Clitomarus by wrestling rebuilds his city.

of pe citee went to pe temple of Apollo, and askede weper euer mare pare citee sulde be repaireld agayne. Apollo answerde, & said, 'he pat schaft bygge pis citee agayne salt bafe thre victories. And when h he hase geten thre victories, he salt owne come & reparett this citee, and bigge it agayne, also wele, als euer it was.'

1 Alexander fra pe citee of Thebe, went to Corynth, and pare 8 come tiff hym certane lordes, prayand hym pat he walde come & see a wrestillynge. And he grunted pyn. And to pis Ilke wrestillynge pare come folke witowttew nowmer. And when all men were gadarde, Alexander saide: 'whilk of sowe,' quo he, 'salt gas & be-gyn pis playe'. Clitomarus pyn, of whayn I spake biforn, kneid bi-fore pe kyng, & saide: 'lorde,' quo he, 'cete wolde vouche-safte to giffe me leue, I wif be-gyn.' And Alexander bad hym ga to. And Clitomarus went in-to pe 10 place, and pe firste maund pat come in his hande, at the first tourne he threwe hym wide open. And Alexander said untill hym: 'Caste thre meun,' quo he, '& pou salt be corouned'. pyn pare come anofer maund to Clitomarus and wynetheg he come 20 in his hande3, when he was casteen wyde open. And one pe same wyse he seruede pe thirde. And pan Alexander gart sett on his heuede a precious coroun, and pe kynges seruaunde3 spirrede hym what his name was. 'My name,' quo he, 'es wit 24 owttew citee'. When Alexander herde pat he saide vn-tiff hym: 'Thou noble wrestiller,' quo he, 'whi arte pou callede wit owttew citee'. 'Wrechipfulf emperour,' quo he, 'be-fore pat 3e werede pe emperours Dyademe, I hadde a citee full of folke3 28 & of reches. Bot now, sene 3e come to this astate & pis dignytee, I am spoyled & pruiede of my citee.' And when [he] herde this, he wiste wele pat he menyt of pe citee of Thebe. And pan he garte his sergende3* make a crye that 32 [he] hadd gissen Clitomarus leue for to repairelle pe citee of Thebes. Fra Corynth, Alexander and his oste removed tiff a citee pat highte Platea, of pe whilke a maund pat highte Scassa- geras was prynce. And Alexander went to pe temple of Diane, 36 and fande pare a woman3 prest, pe whilke was a mayde3, & scho was araied lyke presteg of pat tymne. And when [scho] sawe Alexander, scho saide vn-tiff hym: 'Alexander,' quo scho, 'pon

* Leaf 12.

an oracle of Apollo as to whether their city should ever be rebuilt. The answer is, it shall be rebuilt by a three-fold victor. Alexander is invited to a wrest- ling. He asks who will begin.

Clitomarus begs the favour of so doing.

He wins once. Alexander's promise. He wins twice. He wins thrice. Crowning him they ask him his name. He answers, 'One without City.' How it be- fell with his answer.

From Corinth they go to Platea and the Tem- ple of Diane. The maid- en Priestess

1 Five half lines space with miniature A, with knight within,
Alexander writes to the Athenians.

and her prophecy.

Scras-
saggeras

curses the

priestess,

and it

avails him

nothing.

He falls

from his

Lordship

and flees to

Athens, and

prevails on

them to

help him.

Alexander

marches on

Athens.

The letter

of Alex-

ander to

the Athe-

nians, tell-

ing of his

deeds and

conquests.

He asks of

them but

ten philo-

arte welcomme. Thou shalt conquer all as we wold. One as morne Scrasaggeras went to its same temple, and al the as pe pret saue hym, scho saide vn-till hym: 'Scrasaggeras, quop scho, 'what thou wert-in a shorre while thou shalt be pruing of 4 pe lordchip bot thou now hase?' And when he herde pis he was righte wrathie wit hir, & saide, 'thou arte noyte worthy,' quop he, 'for to be prestere here. Alexander come to pe jisterdaye, and thou prophiciyed hym gude; And to me thou sais, pat I shal lose all as my lordechipere.' And scho answerd, & saide, 'Be ye noyte angry to me,' quop scho: 'for all pis buse be fulfilled, and nathynge pare of lefte ne ouerhippede.' A littile after it fele pat Alexander was gretely angred at Scrasaggeras, and tule fra hym his lordchippe, & Scrasaggeras went to pe cite of Athenes, and sare wepande he compleene hym to pe citazes of Athenes & tallde pam how pat Alexander hadd priued hym of his lordchippe. And pam pe Athenane was wunder [wraithe] towards 16 Alexander, and made grete boste & manace, pat pay scoldyrse agaynes hym, but if he restored Scrasaggeras agayne tiff his lordechippe. Alexander removed his Oste fra Platea to pe citee of Athenes, and when he] herde tellpe pat pe Athenens ware 20 wrathe tiff hym-warde, and manaced hym, he wraite vn-to pam a lettre pat spak one this wyse.

1. Alexander, pe son of Philippe and of qwene Olympics, vn to the Athenenes, gretynge. Fra pe tyme pat oure Fadir was 24 dedde, & we were sett in pe Trone of his dignyte, we went into pe weste Marches, where all pe folke pat duelle3 thare for pe maste party salde pam vn-till vs wit-owtten strese. Fra pe citee of Rome to pe weste see occyane, all meow sub-

mytte pam vn-till vs pat wit oure awen fre will we hase taken pam 2 tiff our grace. And thase pat walde noyte submytt pam tiff vs wit fairenes, we hase distrayed3 pam & paire cite3, and dougen pam down to pe erthe. And now pis oper 32 daye as we went fra Macedoyn & passed thurgh Asye: bi pe cite of Thebe, pe Thebeyens despysed vs, & lete as pay sett noyte by vs. Bot onane we garte pari pryde saffe, and de-

1 Four half lines space with mini-
ture A.

2 Here the scribe first has written 'to grace' and then erased it, substituting as

in text.

3 The ny in distrayed has been sub-
stituted for nu by the same scribe.
struyed bathe pani & thaire citee. And pare-fore we write
vn-to 30w; that 3e sende vs teu philosophres pat be wyse, * by
pe whilke we may be encensede and conselled: For oper thynig
wilt we nane aske 30w, Bot aile anely pat pe halde vs for you
lorde & you kynge. And 3f 3e wilt noyte submytt 30w vn-
tiff vs, 30w buse oper be strangere pani we, or elis submytt you
to sum lordechip, pat be strangere pani oures.'

8 The Athenyenes reed pis lettre and pani pay bigan to crye
one highte. And ane, pat highte Eschille, stode vp amange3
pani, and said: 'It es fully my consent,' quo he, 'pat we on
na wise assent [to thise] worde3 of Alexander.' Alle pe folke pani
pat was gadirdre pare, preyed pe philosophre Demostines, pat
he walde teu pani his conselle, as touchyngne pat mate. And he
stude vp, & badd all men be stift. And pani he said vn-to pani.
'Sirs,' quo he, 'I pray 30w takes tent vn-to my worde3 &
16 herkenes gudly what I saif say. If 3e fele 30w of power, for
tiff agayne-stande Alexander, & to supprisse hym, pani feghtes
wit hym manly, and obeys nozte tiff his worde3. And if 3e
suppose 3e be nozte strange yngogh to feghte wit hym pani
here3 hym, and obeys vn-tiff hym. 3e knawe wele, pat als
oure eldirs telles vs, 3ereses was a grett kynge, & a myghty,
and many victories he gatt. And neuer pe lesse in Ellada he
suffrede grete meschefe. Bot he, this Alexander, hase done
24 many batailles, in pe whilke he suffrede neuer disese bot alwaye
had pe ouerhande. Pe Thiriennes, I pray 30w, ware [pai] nozte
balde knyghtes and strange, and all paires lyfe hade bene excer-
cysede in Armes? And whate profitede pani paire strenghe?
20 Pe Thebiennes also pait were so wyse, and so grete exercysede
in armes, fra pe firste tyme pait pe citee was bygged; whare-off
seruede paire grete wit pani, and paire grete strength, when
Alexander assailede pani? Pe Poliponiens fughte wit Alexander,
32 bot pay myghte na while agayne-stande his men of armes. Bot
also paires ware disconfit and slae. It es noyte vnknown
vn-to 30w, how many cite3 castells & townes3 for fere submittis
pani vn-tiff hym wit-owtene any assawte gyllying. Parefore,
36 it es noyte my consaille pait 3e be heuy, ne wrathe tiff Alexander

sophers to
teach him
* Leaf 12
bk.
rendering
homage
to
him; or else
must it
either be
stronger
than Alex-
ander or
dependent
on some
stronger
state.
The
speech
of Aeschy-
lus against
Alexander.
The
Athen-
ians beg
counsel of
Demos-
thenes. He
tells them
if
they feel
themselves
strong
enough to
resist, but
if not then
let them
submit.
He com-
pare Alexander
and Xerxes to-
gether.
He nar-
rates Alex-
ander's
victorious
campaign.

1 Four half lines space with miniature
T.
2 MS, reads 'paires' for 'pay.' This form
recurs on p. 55, l. 29. Cf. Icelandic þeir.
There is nothing left out nor is it a mis-
print.
Alexander's letter to the Athenians.

Alexander is a wise and reasonable man, neither would he have put Scassageras out of his Lordship except for treason against him.

The Athenians commend this

* Leaf 13.

counsel greatly and sent tribute but no philosophers.

He hears of the speeches of both Aeschylius and Demosthenes.

He writes them a letter. The Letter of Alexander to the Athenians. He had purposed a philosophic dispute with them, and have shown them his friends. But their deeds showed otherwise. Whoso of them rises against him, he will make an example of them, as knights, think ill and fear ill.

He had put S. out of office for treason. They have despaired his demand for ten philosophers.

for Scassageras. For all men knowes wele pat Alexander es a wonder wyse man & a warre, & a man pat gouernes hym by resoun; and pare-fore 3e may wele wete, he walde no3te put Scassageras out of his lordchipe upon lesse pan& forfett vn-4 till hym.' When pe Athenyenes had here de pir wordes, pay commedid' grety the conselle of Demostines, and than they ordeyned a coroun of golde pe weghte of 1. pounde, and sent Messangers purewit, and wit tribute vn-till Alexander, bot 8 philosophes sent pay nane. * And when pire Messangers come till Alexander, pay gaffe hym pe coroun, and pe tribute, pat pe Athenyenes sent hym, and talde hym pat pay had highte hym a grete nowner of cateffe. And when Alexander had hem pamph, 12 he understode wele pe conceiff of Eschilus pat conceiff pe Athenyenes to agaynestand hym, and also pe conceiff of Demostenes that conceiff pamph pe contrary, and pamph he wrote a lettre to pamph where-of the Tenoure was this.

1 Alexander pe son of Philippe and queene Olympias, for pe name of kyngge will we no3te take apen vs, before we hafe oure enemys vnder oure subieccion: vn-to pe Athenyenes gretyng. It es no3te oure entent to come in 3our citee wit oure oste, 20 Bot allanly to come & dispuyte wit 3our philosophes, and to asche pamph certane questyons, Oure purposse was also to hafe declared for oure trewe legge3 & oure gude Fren3. Bot 3our dede3 proues pe contrary, as it done vs till understande. Oure 24 godde3 we take to witnesse, pat whilke of 3ow so ryse3 agayne3 vs, we saft take swilke wreke apen hym 'hym pat oper me3 saft take ensumple pure-by. Bot 3e als schrewes, and euyl men, eu3er mare trowe3 if, and thynekis if. Wate 3e no3te wele pat 28 pe Thebienes pat raise agaynes vs, hadd3 paire mede als pay dissuered. And 3e haffand in vs a wrange consayte, blame3 vs, For we putt Scassageras owte of his Office the whilke 3 forfett grety agaynes oure maieste. We sent vn-to 3ow bi 32 lettre for ten philosophers, bot 3e, no3te knawande oure grete powere & oure myghte, despysed oure maundement and walde no3te fulfill it. Neuer pe les if att 3e hafe offendid agaynes

1. Four half lines with miniature A.
2. The reader must probably here supply 'base' between 'as it' and 'us till understande', but as it occurs several times it may be a syntactical peculiarity.
3. The reader must probably supply 'cas or deele between pe whilke and forfett, but see previous notice.
Alexander and the Lacedemonians.

Vs whider-towarde and beine disobeyande till oure maiestee, we forgiffe 30w all 3our gilt, and pe greuance pat 3e hase don vs, so 3at pe be obeyande vn-till vs, fra pis tymse forwardre. Com-
4 forthes 30w parefore & be3 mery, for of vs 3e schaff hase na greuance ne na disesse be-cause 3e did after pe conceif of Demostynes.'

1 When pe Athenyenes herd? pis lettre redd, pay ware ri3te 8 gladde, and pa3 Alexander & his Oste went fra thetheyn vn-to Lacedoyne. Bot pe Lacedounes walde one na wyse obey vn-till Alexander, bot said' ilkani of pa3m til oper, 'latt vs no3te be lykke pe Athenyenes,' quecp pay, 'pat drede pe manaschynge, 12 and pe boste of Alexander bot late vs schewe oure myst3e, and oure strenghe and manly defende *oure citee agayn3 hym.'

When pay hadd saide, pay spered 3ates of pe cete cate, and went manly to pe walles. And a grete nowmre of pa3m
16 tuke pa3m schippe3 & went to pe see, a grete nauy, to feghte wit Alexander are he come to lande. And when Alexander saw this, he sent a lettre to pa3m sayand on this wyse.

'Alexander pe soif of Philippe and of pe queene Olympias
20 vn-to pe Lacedounes we sende. We conceif 30w, pat pat, that 30ur elders base lefte 30w, 3e kepe hale & sound & in saute3 3 and lyfte3 no3te 30ur hende ouer hie to pe thynges3 pat pe may no3te reche to. And if 3e desire for to hase loy of 30ur strenghe, 24 dose swa pat 3e be worthy to hase wirchipe of vs. Parefore we commande 30w, pat 3e turne agayne wit 30ur schippe3, and leue3 pa3m, & gase to lande by 30ur awen3de fire wif; or sekirly I saif sett fire in tham & brymm3 pa3m. And if 3e dispece oure 28 commandement, blame3 na ma3 bon 3our selfe, if we wreke vs one 30we.'

'The Lacedounes redd' pis lettre, and when it was redd, pay ware wonder heuy. No3te for-thi pay redid pa3m to feghte:
32 Bot Alexander arryued' in an oper coste, and come to pe ciete are pay wiste and vmbylapped' pe ciete one ilke a syde, and assaillede it strandle & dange 'pe Lacedounes of pe walles & slewe many of pa3m & wounded many, and sett frye in paire 36 schippe3 & brynt pa3m. Pe remanaut of pa3m pat ware lefte

Neverthe-
less he will for-
give them if they be
good for
the future, since
they followed
Demos-
themes' ad
vice. Alex-
ander goes thence
to Lacedo-
monia. But
they would
in no wise
submit to
* Leaf 13
him. But
despising
him the
Athenians
manned
the walls.
Yet others
of them fled
over-seas,
and others
went to
meet him in
ight. The
Letter to
Alex-
ander to the
Lacedo-
mmonians
bidding
them re-
turn and
submit.

Alexander
arrives by an
unfore-
seen way
and sur-
rounds
them.

He attacks
the city

1 Three lines space miniature W.
2 Four half lines with miniature A.
3 MS. saute3 with u written over
4 Four lines space with miniature T.
Durian takes counsel.

fiercely till they surrender. Alexander tells them they would not receive him peaceably; therefore are they come to this great harm. Alexander reproaches them with overgreat conceit and quotes a homely proverb.

* Leaf 14.

They thought in vain to have done to him as their forefathers did to King Xerxes. Darius hears of the coming of Alexander. He is greatly terrified and holds a council. The speech of Darius. He beholds that he has underrated him, and sees that they must now look to their safety. He fears that God's foresight helps Alexander so that he may eventually conquer Persia.

appon lyfe, when pay saw this grete meschefe come owte of pe citee vn-till Alexander, & felle doui at his fete, & besonghte hym of mercy & of grace. And Alexander answerd, 'I come to 30w, quop he, ' meke & mylde, bot in pat degré 3e walde no3te 4 ressayffe me, parefore now are 3our schippe3 brynned, & 3our citee distruyed, & 3our folke3 slayne. Warned I no3te beFore pat 3e schulde no3te heue 3our hande3 ouer-lye to pe sternes, to pe whilk e nane erthely man may wynh. For wha so euer 8 eyme hier, pa Cô his fete may wynh to sum Ï halde, he salt falle onane doui to pe grounde. And parefore es ãre a com- mone proverbe: Pat "wha sa hewes to lie, pe chippes wilt falle in his egh." 3e wende hafe done till vs as 3our eldiers 12 didde sumetyme till kynge 3eres, bot 3our wenyng dessayue3d 30w. For 3e myghte no3te agayne-stande vs when we assaliede 30w.' When * he hadd saide on this wise, he gaffe pa Cô leue to gaa whare ã pay walde. And than he remouede thehym & went 16 to-wardere Cicili. And when pe emperour Darius herdt tell of pe comynge of Alexander, he was grety abaite and sent after alt his prince3, Dukes & Erles, & oper grete lords, & went till a consaile. And he saide vn-to pa Cô, ' I see wele,' quop he, ' pat 20 he, this Alexander, pat gase thus abowte werrayand, waxe3 grety in wirshippe, and ay-whare whare he comm3 he hase pe victory. I wende he hadd' bene a theeffe & a robbowr, pat hadd went till cuntres3 pat ere wayle & feble, and durst no3te agayne- 24 stande hym, & robbowr pa Cô & spoyled pa Cô. Bot now, I see wele, he es a doghy maîn of Armes, & a noble werrayour. And ay pe mare pat I hafe depraued hym and despyshed hym; pe mare ryse3 his name, & his wirshippe. I sent hym a balle, a topee, 28 & a scourge, for to lere barne-laykes; bot hym pat I called a disciple, he sem3 a mayster & whare-so-euer he gase, Fortune gase wit hym. Parefore vs byhonne3 to trete of oure hele, & of oure pople3, and pute awaye alt pride & alt foly: & 32 namare despisie Alexander, saynge pat he es noghte, by cause we are emperour of Perse. For his littillines waxes and oure gretnes deccres3. I hafe grete dowte, pat godde3 forluke helpe3 hym, so pat whils we ere abowte, & wene3 to putte hym 36 out of Ellada, we be spoyled, by hym, of pe rewme of Perse.'

1 When Darius hadd said thir worde3, his broder Coriather

1 Four lines.
Darius consults his councillors.

And of his brother advises him to lead his own men in the van as Alexander does.
Alexander and his Physician.

chase; a grete floke of shepe & gerse þam sparle. Righte so, and þe wysdome of þe grekes passeg oper nacyons.'

1 In this mene tym, Alexander sempled a gret multitude of folke to þe nowmer of oc of feghtynge men, and renewed to warde Perse, & come till a reuere þat es called Mociona, of whilke þe water was wonder calde, & faire, & clere. And Alexander hadd a grete lyste for to be bathede þare-in, and went in-to it & bathed hym, & waschede hym þare-in, and also soð s he felle in a feuer and a hened-werk þare-wit, so þat he fure wonder iff. And when þe Macedoyns saw þære lorde so grefe seke, þay were wonder heuy and reghte drender, and said amanges selfe: 'And Darius,' quod þay, 'wete þat oure lorde 12 Alexander be þus seke, he salt come & falle apoð vs sodaynly, & fordo vs ilkane. For, and we hadd þe hele of oure lorde Alexander, we hadd comforth ynoche & dredde no nacyon.' Than kyn Alexander called till hym his Phicisien þat 16 highte Philippe & badd hym ordeyne hym a Medcyne for his sekenes. Þis ilk Phicisien was 2 * bot a Jong man, bot he was a passyng kumyning man, and a sotell in alt þe poynete þat langed to phisic. And he highte Alexander, þat [by] a certane 20 drynyke he sulde onane make hym alt hale. Nowe felt it, þat was wit Alexander a prynce, þat highte Parmenius & was lorde of hermony. This prynce hade grete envy to þis phisicien, bi-cause þat Alexander luffede hym so passandly 24 wele & belyfe he wrate till Alexander, and warned hym þat he schulde be warre wit Philippe his phisiciene, and on na wyse resayse þat drynyke þat he walde gyffe hym. For he said, þat Darius had highte to gyffe hym his doghter to wyffe & his 28 kyngdom after his disesse if swa ware, þat he myghte be any crafte make ane ende of hym. Whên Alexander hadde redi þis lette he was na thynge trubbled, so mekyl he tristede of þe conscience of his phisician.

32 In þe mene tym, þis Phisician come till Alexander wit þe forsaid drynyke, and Alexander tuk þis drynyke in a hande & þe forsaid lettre in his óper hande and bihold þe Phisician in þe vesage rjte scharpely. To whome þe Phisician saide: 36

1 Five lines space with miniature I.
2 At bottom of leaf 14 obv. is written 'if (fecit !) Seven. Ser.'
Alexander puts his Physician to the test.

'wirchipfull! Emperor,' quo'p he, 'be na thynge fered bot drynke pe medecyne baldely,' and par onane Alexander tuk this drynke, & schewed Philippe pe lettre. And when Philippe had redde 4 pe lettre, he said tifi Alexander: 'Now for sothe, my lorde,' quo'p he, 'I take our goddes to witnesse pat I ne am no'gte gilty of this treson, pat here es wryty.' Alexander par was all hale als ever he was, & called vn-tift Philippe his physician 8 & embraced hym in his armes & said: 'Philippe,' quo'p he, 'knawes pou how mekiiff luffe & triste I hase in the. Firste I dranke thi medecyne, & synce I schewed pe pe lettre pat was sent me agaynes the.' 'Mi lorde,' quo'p Philippe, 'I be-

12 seke 30w pat 3e wolde vochesaffe to send after myn accusour, and do hym come bi-fore your presence pat pis lettre sent vn-to 30w, and base lered me for to do1 swilk a hie treson. Be-lyfe par gerte Alexander send after Parmeny for to come vn-tift 16 hym, and gerte pe sothe be serched, & fande pat he was worthy pe dede. And pai he gert girde of his heued:

2 Fra peine kyng Alexander remowde his Oste tift hermony pe mare & onane he conquered it, & put it vnder his subieccion. 20 And fra peine he trauailede many a day *wit his Oste, and at pe laste come tift a cantre wonder drye, & full of creuessa3 of cauerne3, & alde cisternes where na water myghte be funden. And Fra peine pay passede thurgh a cantree, pat es called 24 Andrias, to pe Reuere of Eufrates. And pare pay luge2 paro. 28 Andrias, to pe Reuere of Eufrates. And pare pay luge2 paro. 32 And, when Alexander saw paro drenda' on this wyse, he girt birde-men, pat were pare kepanl kateIl, wend ouer before, and warnde pat pe Oste schulde folowe paro. 36 Than was Alexander ri3te wrathe and callede vntift hym all his prynces, & grete lorde3, and firste he went hym selfe ouer

Alexander takes the drink given him, and shows the Physician the letter.

Alexander declares to him his great trust.

The trial of theaccuser.

Alexander conquers Armenia

* Leaf 15 br.

the Greater and marches through deserts to the Eufrates. He builds a bridge of boats and logs, but his knights fear to cross it because of the fierceness of the current. Alexander sends herdsmen over, yet the knights durst not follow. Alexander then goes
Alexander's trouble with his men; the Battle with Darius.

first over the bridge with his princes. Then the army follows. Alexander destroys the bridge behind him. The knights mourn thereat, fearing disaster.

Alexander's speech to his men.

Let them all perish or conquer, for they shall never see home again till they have overthrown all their enemies.

Darius gathers a great force to meet Alexander upon the river Tigris. But his men flee.

The brave Persian who dare alone try to take Alexander's life in disguise for the sake of the

pe bryges, & all his prynce3 folowed hym, and sythen all pe Oste. Twa grete ryuers rynnes thurgh Medee, Mesopotamy and Babiloyne, pat es to say Tygre & Eufrates, and soo rynne3 in-to pe reuere1 of Niles. When Alexander & all hys Oste 4 ware past ouer Eufrates, he gert smyte sonder pe brygge pat he hadd' gert make bbefore, and dissolue ilk a pece pare-off fra oper. And when his knyghtis sawe that, pay ware rehte heuy and munede gretly parefore, and said emanges pam selfe, 'What sall we now doo,' quoip pay, 'when we are harde by-stadde witoure enemies & walde flee. For ouer pis reuere may we nogte wynn.' And when Alexander perceuyed pat munmore of his folke, he said vn-to pam. 'What es pat,' quoip he, 'pat 3e say 12 amange3 3ow, "If it faile pat we flee owte of pe bataile." Sothely, I late 3ow wele wite, pat pis is pe cause whi I garte for-do pis brygg, pat I gert make; For-thi, pat owwer we schulde feghte manly or eills if [we] walde flee, we schulde aft persiche at 16 anes and aft drynke of a coppe. For-whi pe victorie es noste aretted to pam pat flie3, Bot to pam pat habyde3, or folowes on pe chace. Pare-fore conforteth 3ow wele, & beso balde of hertis, and thynke it bot a plaie stalworthly to feghte. For I say 20 3ow sekerly; we ne schaff never see Macedoyne, be-forre we hafe ouercomen aft oure enemies, And pam wit pe victorie we saft tourne hame agayne.'

2 In pis mene tyme, kyng Darius gadirde a grete multitude of men agaynes Alexander, and ordyne3d ouer pam fyve-hundrith * chyftaynes of grete lordes and lugged hym wit his men apoon pe reuere of Tygre. And one a day thir twa kynges wit paire bather Ostes mett to-gedir apoon a faire felde 28 and faughte to-gedir wonder egerly. Bot some Darius men hadd pe werre & 3ode to grounde thikksfalde, slayne in pe felde. And wheen pe remenante saw pat, pay tuk pam to pe flighte. In Darius oste was a ma of Perse, a dogheyt, & a balde; 32 to whaym Darius highte for to giffe his doghter to wyfe, if so were, pat he myghte, by any way, sla kyng Alexander. This ma gatt hym clethynyng and Armour like vn-to pe macedoyns, and went amange3 pam, as pay faghte, ay till he come by-hynd 36 kyng Alexander. And also3 als he come nere hym, he lifte his

1 Scribe first wrote reverence here, and then wrote a y (vyvere) over it. The process is quite plain.

2 Two lines with small miniature 1.
The brave Persian; who alone dares against Alexander.

swerde on heghte, & lette flye at hym wit aft pe myghte pat he hade, and hitt hym on pe heued so fercey, pat he perched 1 his bacenett, and drewe pe blode of hym. When Alexander knyghtis saw that: pay tuke hym anone, & broghte hym biffer Alexander, and Alexander, supposyng pat he hadde bene a macedoyne, saide vn-till hym. 'Wirchipuff man,' quo ef he, ' & doghety & strange what ayde pe at me, for to giffe stylke a strake, knewe pou 8 noȝte wele pat it was I, Alexander your helpere & your allere servande.' And [the] Percyene answered, & said, 'Wiete pou wele wirchipuff emperor,' quo ef he, 'I ne ame na macedoyne, but I am a man of Perse; and this dede I did.' For kyng 12 Darius made me a promysse of his doghetir to wife, if I myghte brynge hym thi heidid. 2 Than kyng Alexander called bi-for hym all his knyghtis and askede paȝwhat paȝwhat thoghte was for to do wit this maȝ. Sum answered & saide paȝwhat it beste 16 to gerrre smyte of his heidid. Sum for to putt hym to pe fire for to brynde, Sum to gare drawe & hang hym. And when Alexander had herde paire conceitt, he answered & said: 'Sirs,' quo ef he, 'what wrange or what defawte caȝ ȝe fynde in ȝis maȝ, Serȝ he 20 hase besied hym tiff obey tiff his lordes commandement, and at his power fulfilled it. Whilke of 30w, so deney hym worthy to be dedde, es worthy in tyme commynge to hafe pe same dome. For if I commande ane of 30w for to ga & sla Darius, pe same 24 paynec, that ȝe deme pis maȝ for to suffre, ware ȝe worthy for to suffre 30wesle of Darius, if ȝe myȝte be getyn. 2 And *pan he commanded pat he schulde wende hame to his felaweys wit-owten any harme. When Darius herde pat his lordes ware slayne in 28 grete nowmer, he gadered a grete multitude of knyghtis and of fotemen, and went vp on a hill pat es called Taurisius, and thare he made his mustre of his maȝ, supposyng pat he schuld over-come Alexander thrugh multitude of folke. Bot alsoynes al pay 32 mett wit paire batherere ostec, and bigaw for to fighte, Darius menȝ fledd and hymselfe also. And Alexander persuede hym vn-to pe citee of Bactriaȝ, and þare he lugged hym, and offerde Sacrifice till his goddeȝ. And on þe morne he garte assaille pe

1 The scribe wrote first 'perced,' altered afterwards, in a very rough way, to 'perched.'
2 MS. reads 'and he commanded' at bottom of first side of leaf 16 and 'pan he commanded' on the top of second side of the same leaf.
Darius again defeated; treachery and trouble.

citee, and wanne it on werre. And in þe cheffe place þare-of he sett his troue. And aþ þir oper citez þat were abowte it, he wamed þam o werre, & putt þam vnder his subieccioun. In þis ilke citee of Bactrian, he sанд dreure wit-owtten nowmer, and also his moder, and his wyfe.

1 And in þe mene tyme, whils Alexander lay at Batran: þare come a prync of Darius oste vn-till Alexander, & said vn-till hym, ‘Wirchipfult emperour,’ quoþ he, ‘I hafe a lang tyme bene s a knyght of Darius, and done hym grete seruyce; and 3itt to this day I had neuer na reward of hym. And þare-fore if it like vn-to 3owre maieste; take me ten thouzande of 30ur men of armes; and I hete 30w, for to brynge to 30ur hande kyng 12 Darius, & þe maste parte of his oste.’ And when Alexander had herde þis, he said vn-till hym. ‘Frende,’ quoþ he, ‘I thanke þe mekiff of thi faire promys. Neuer þe lesse, I late þe wite my men wiþte beleue þat þou wilt feythe agaynes thyñ owenn 16 pele.’ In þe mene tyme a Prync of Darius oste sent vn-till hym a letter, of whilk þis was þe tenour.

2 To Darius, grete kyng of kynges, his lordes whilke he hase ordeyned cheftaynes vnder hym Seude; meke seruyce. Oftymes be-fore this hafe we wrete to 30ur maieste, and now agayne we write vn-to 30w, & latez 30w wite þat þe macedoynes & kyng Alexander, as wode lyouns ere enterde oure lande3, and aþ oure strethens, as a wilde raneschande beste he hase destroyd: & oure knyghtes slayne. And oppresst we are wit so grete tribulacionus, þat we [may] na lengare suffre his mawege, ne his malece bere. Whare-fore, mekly we be-seke 30ur benynge maiestee, þat þe wille driwe to 30ure mynde oure meke seruyce, 28 and swilke socoure vonchsaufe to sendvs, þat þe wete put off and agaynestande þe violence & þe malice of oure fore-said enimys.’ When Darius had redde þis lettir, on ane he gert write a lettir to kyng Alexander, sayand on þis wyse.

3 Daryus kyng of Perse and kyng of kynges, vn-to my servaunde Alexander, I say. Now late þare es commen til þeure eres tythynges: þat þou wenæ to eueni thi liltilhe dyf ðiour hegte magnificence. Bot Seud it es impossible til a heuy asse, wit 36

1 Three lines with miniature A and knight’s head within.
2 Three lines space with miniature T.
3 MS. repeats ‘he’ twice.
4 Three lines space with miniature D and a man’s head within, much faded.
Letters of Darius and Alexander.

owtteth wenges, or oper instrumentes of flying, for to be lerte vp to pe sternes, late noeste thy themselves be raysed to hye in pride for pe victories pat pou hase geteth. We hafe wele heerd sweet pat pou hase done gentilly, and schewed grete humanetye till oure moder, oure wyfe, & oure childre, and parefore I late pe wele wite pat, als lang als pou dose wele to pam, pou saith fynde me name enemy to the. And if pou do ilt to pam pou saith hafe pe 8 enemetye of me, and pare-fore spare pam noghte, bot do to pam as pe liste. For somtyme pou saith see & fele pe sentence of oure ire lighte apoD thi henge pride.’ When Alexander hadd redde pis lettre he wrate hym Anooper agayne whare-off pe tenour was this.

1 Alexander pe soi of Philippe & qwene Olympias to Darius kynge of Perse we write. Pride & vayne glorie hase oure gode of alh waye hater; and takez vengeance of dedly meh pat takes apoiD pam pe name of immortalitee. Bot pou, als I wele see, cessez; nozthe zitt hinder-to for to blasfeme in alh pat pou may. Bot of that pat pou blame me for pe benygnetyes that I schewed pie moder, pi wyfe, & pi childre; pou ert moued on a lewed fantasye. For I late pe wele wyte, I did it nozthe * for to be thanked of the, ne for to hafe thi Beneuolence pare-fore. Bot it come of a gentilnes of oure avennu hert, fownden in vertu. Of thee victories also whilke pe forluk of godd hase sent vs, ere we na-thyng enpriddede. For we knawe wele pat oure goddis alwaye helpes vs, whilke pou ilk a daye dispyses & settes at nozthe. And this saith be pe laste letter pat I saith writte vn-to pe. Beware if pou wilt, For I say the sekerly, I come to pe onane. Pís lettre gaffe Alexander to pe messangers of Darius and many grete giftes pare wit. Seyme,² he sent anooper lettre, tife his pryncez & his lordez, of pis tenour.

3 Alexander, pe soi of Philippe & of pe qwene Olympias vn- to pe pryncez & pe lordez vnder oure subieccion in Capadoce, In laodice, or ells whare duelland, gretyng, & gude grace. We charge you & commandez 30w stravly pat ilkaw of 30w ordayne vs in alh pe haste pat 3e may jm nete-hydes barked; & send pam till Alexander, pat we and oure knyghtis may gere him for his kindness to his wife and chil- dren, and enjoining him to con- tinue his courtesy to them.

Alexander to Darius, reproaching him with assuming to himself the cha- racter of deity, spurning * Leaf 17 bk. his proffered thanks, and leaving the decision of the matter to the gods.

1 Three lines space, miniature A, with king’s head (much faded).
² MS. clearly reads seyme, it may be for ‘seynye’ (=seine).

Alexander writes to his Lords, ordering commis- sariat materials.

3 Four lines space, red capital A, much smudged; a small a written beside it in the margin.

make vs of paim clotheyng, & schoeess; And wit cameles 4hau at Alexander gerrre carv paim to pe water of Eufrates.' In pis mene tyme a pynce of Darius, Nostand by name, wrate to Darius on pis wise.

1 To Darius pe wirchipfull grete godd his servande Nostand' law seruyce. Me aughte no3te to sende swylyk tythynge to your ryalle maiestee, bot grete nede gers me do it. Pare-fore be it known vn-to your hie lordchipe, 3at twa grete pynce3 of yours,&. 8 I, hase foghte on kyng Alexander, And hymes fallen pe victorie, & slayne he hase thir twa worthy pynce3, & mekiif oper folke, and I fleed greuously wonderd. And many worthi knyghtis of yours hase for-saken your lordchipe & ioyned paim tiff Alexander 12 ose, pe whilk he hase wirchipfully, and hase giffen grete lordchipes of yours.' And when Darius had redd pis lettre, he sent in haste tiff Nostand, and commande hym for tiff ordeyne a grete Oste ; and manfully agaynestande pe folke of Macedoyne. 16 He sent also a lettre to Pirus kyng of Ynde, prayng hym to helpe hym agaynes Alexander, and Pirus wrate agayne in pis manere.

2 Pirus, kyng of Ynde, vn-to Darius, kyng of Perse, gretyng. 20 For pou hase prayed vs to come to the in helpynge "of the agaynes thyn enemyss, we late the wete, pat we are redy & alwaye hase bene, for to come to helpe 3ow. Bot as at pis tyme we are letteed to come to 30w, be-cause of grete sekenesse pat we 24 ere stadd in, Neuer pe lesse, sekerly, it es ri3te heuy vn-tiff vs, & greuous, vn-tiff [vs to] here of pe grete injury pat es done vn-tiff 3ow. And parefore we late 3ow wite, pat wit-in schorte tym, we saff come for to helpe 3ow wit teu legyouns of knyghtis.' 28 Bot when Rodogorius, Darius moder, herd telle pat Darius hir so3 ordayned hym for to feghte agayne wit kyng Alexander scho was ri3te sorry and wrote a lettre vn-tiff hym pat conten3d this sentence.

'To 4 kyng Darius, hir moste biolued son, Rodogorius, his modir sende3 gretyng & ioy. I hase vnderstanden 3at 3e hafe assemblede 30ur men, & mekiif oper folke also, for to feghte

1 Four lines with red capital T, much smudged; a small t written beside it in margin.
2 Two lines with smudged capital P; a small p written in margin.
Darius' mother. Alexander's vision.

eftsones wit Alexander. Bot I late þe wite it wiff availe þe nathyng. For þöghe se hadð gadirde to gedir alle þe men in þe werlde duellynge, ʒit se ware vnable to agayne-stande hym. For þe forelukke of godd' maynteneþ hym, & yphaldeþ hym. And þarehouse dere soþ, it es my consfft, þour heeghenesse of herte ʒe lefe, & faï sumwhate fra ʒour glory, and þee favorable to þe gretnes of Alexander. For better it es to forga þat at ʒe may 8 noþte halde, and haffe in pesse þan þat at ʒe may halde, þan for too couett aft and be excluded & for-ga aft. 'When Darius redde þis lettre, he was gretly troubled and weped bitterly, command'vn-tift his mynde, his moder, his wyf, & his childer.

12 In the mene tyme kyng Alexander removed his oste, and drew nepe þe citee of Susis, in þe whilke Darius was lengand the same tyme, so þat he myȝte see aft þe heghe hilleþ þat ware abownþ þe citee. Þan Alexander commanded aft his men, þat ilkand of þam suld cutte dowide a brawneche of a tree, and bere þam furth wit þam & dryfe bi-fore þam alle manere of beste; þat þay myȝte lynde in þe paye. And when the Percyenes saw þam fra þe heghe hilleþ þay wounded þam gretly. And Alexander come 20 wit his oste to þe citee of Susis and lugged hym nere besyde þe citee. And þan he called his prynceþ; & his ðoper lordeþ; and said vn-to þam, 'Late vs,' quop he, 'send a messangere to kyng Darius & biddþ hym' owper & comð feghte wit vs or cits * submyt hym vn-tift vs.' The nexte nyghte after, Godd' Amon apperede vn-tift Alexander in his slepe bryngand' hym þe figure of Mercuri & a manitif, and anoþer manere of garment of Macedoyne, and saide vn-tift hym. 'Alexander, son,' quop hee, 'euer mare when þou hase nede, saft I helpe the. And þarehouse Luke þou sende noghte to Darius þat messangere þat þou spake off. For I wiff þat þou thi selfe clethe thee wit my figure & wende thedir þi selfe; if alle it be perilous for to do, Dred þe na thynge, for 32 I saft be thi helpe, so þat þou saft hafe na maner of disesse.

On þe morne when Alexander rase fra slepe, he was gretly comforthed of his dreme & called till hym his prynceþ; and talde þam alle his dreme, and þay assentede alle, þat he schulde 36 wende to Darius in his propir person. And onane he called vn-tift hym ane of þe princeþ; þe whilke highte Emulus. This

1 Four lines with large red capital I; 2 hym inserted afterwards in left-hand small i written in margin.
Alexander goes to Darius.

Alexander right with a single knight to the River Grancus which was frozen over.

prynce was a wyghte man, & an hardy & wonder trewe till Alexander. And pay Alexander bad hym lepe one a horse, and brynge wit hym a noper horse & folow hym. And he did so. And when pay come to gedir to pe water of Graunte, pe in pe 4 langage of Perse es called Struma, pay fande it frozeon outer, and Alexander onane chaunged he1 wede, & lefte pe foresaid prynce wit twa horse at pe water-syde and hym selfe, wit pe horse pat he satt apo on, went outer pe water apo on pe Ys3, towarde pe citee of 8 Susis. And his prynce besoghte hym pat he walde sufre hym wende wit hym, ne perauenture any disesse felle hym by pe waye. And Alexander answerd & sayde, 'Habyde me here,' quop he, 'For he saith be my helpere, whan in drene; I sawe appere 12 vn-to me.' This ilke water I spake of bi-fore, ait pe wynter seson ilke a nyghte was frozeon all outer; bot tymely in pe mornynge als sone als pe warme sood smate apo on it, pay it dissoluede agayne, & ra@ wonder swiftly; pe brede of pat water es pe space of a 16 furlange. When Alexander come to pe 3ate of pe citee the Perciens, when pay saw hym, hadd grete wonder of his figure, and wen@ he hadd bene a godd, and onane pay asked hym what he was? And he answerd, and said he was a messangere sent fra kyng Alexander to paire lorde Darius, and be-lyfe pay broghte hym til hym. Darius, when Alexander come bi fore hym, said vn-till hym. 'Whethyr eert pyou,' quop he? 'I ame,' quop Alexander, 'sent vn-to pe fra kyng Alexander to wiete where to pyou taries to come till hym to gyffe hym batellie. Owthir come & feghte manfully wit thyne enemys or cils submitte pe till hym & * pay2 hym tribute.'

And Darius heard him and said, 'Art thou then the Alexander 28 who with such madness shaped thy speech, for I see thou holdest thyself not from words as a messenger doth, but art bold as a king. Yet know that by thy words I am not frightened at all. Come dine with me this day.' And with these words, he reached out his hand to him and took him by his right, and led him into the palace. And Alexander, musing, began to say: 'A right good token hath this barbarian wrought me when he clasped my right hand and drew me into 36

---

1 MS. reads 'he'. We ought perhaps to substitute 'his'.
2 Pay him tribute is written at the bottom of leaf 18; between that leaf and what is now leaf 19 a whole leaf is missing.
the palace, because, as the gods say sooth, ere long the palace shall be mine.' And going in, Darius and Alexander lay by a table, and the daintiest feast was laid out. And Darius' marshall gazed hard at Alexander face to face. And the table was wreathed in cleanest gold. But the Persians, seeing Alexander's shape, yet knew nothing of what wisdom, doughtiness, and strength lurked in this small body. The dishes and tables and seats were wrought of the finest gold. The cup-bearers bore cups in golden vessels and rarest jewels. And when a cup was handed to Alexander, he hid it in his breast. And another cup was brought to him and he did the same, and thus too with a third. And those who bore the cups, seeing this, gave the news to the Emperor Darius. And he, hearing of it, rose up, saying: 'Friend, what is this that thou dost, hiding the cups in thy breast?' And Alexander: 'In our king's feasts the guests are wont, whenever they will, to take their drinking-vessels. But, as this seemeth to you unworthy, I will give them back forthwith.' And with these words he gave them back to the cup-bearers. But the Persians who sate at the feast said each to each, 'a good custom, indeed, and one to be praised.' And some lords, too, praised this way and exalted it. But one of the Princes of Darius, called Anapolus, sitting at the feast, gazed hard at Alexander and his face. For he had seen him when, at Darius' bidding, he went into Macedonia to take tribute of Philip. He, knowing his voice and looking on his face, began to think to himself and say: 'Is this not Alexander?' And rising at once he drew near to Darius, saying: 'This messenger whom thou beholdest is Alexander, the son of Philip of Macedon.' And Alexander, seeing them with each other in talk, knew they were speaking of him and he was known. And at this he rose up from his place and leapt away from the board. And taking a blazing torch from a Persian's hand, himself mounted his palfrey, which he found ready outside Darius's palace, and fled in the swiftest flight. And the Persians seeing this, taking weapons, mounted their steeds with a mighty stir, and quickly followed after Alexander. And in the darkness of the nightfall, they began to stray, some scratched their faces by the tree-boughs, some falling into ditches. But Alexander, bearing his blazing torch in hand, fared straight
Alexander's Flight—His harangue to his men.

Darius on his throne sees the golden image of Xerxes break, which foretokens the end of the Persian Empire. Alexander swims the river, but his horse is lost.

forward. Now, Darius sate on his throne and thought of Alexander and how great his daring was. He saw a statue of gold of Xerxes the Persian king, who sate below the high-seat in the hall. And at once the statue broke and was all scattered asunder. And Darius seeing this was smitten with heaviness of heart and began to weep sorely and long. And he said: 'This foretokeneth the wasting of my life, and the utter downfall of the Persian kingdom.' Alexander, however, coming to the river Grauntus, found it swollen, and leapt athwart it. But ere he was over the stream burst its banks, and swept his horse away; with great hardship Alexander escaped and met Eumulus, his lord. And thus he went back to his army and told them of Darius, how he had dealt with him, and the torch with which he had fled away.

How Alexander put heart into his host anew.

And on the following day, he gathered his army, which told two hundred and twenty thousand of weaponed men. And he went up

* * * * * * * * *

*on a hye place & comforteth his men and said vn-to pame: 'Pe multitude of pe pereines, quop he, 'may noste be euend to pe multitude of pe greckes. For sewrly we are ma pone pay. And if pay were ane hundrith sylthes maa then wee, late noste your hertis faile 50 pay parefore. For I telle 50 a grete multitude of flyes may do no harme till a fewee waspess.' And when pe Oste had herde thire wordes pay commendide hym halelye wit a 24 voyce.

1 Than pe emperour Darius removed his ost, and come to pe renere of Graunt on pe nyghte, and went ouer on pe ys3, and par he lugged hym. The Oste of Darius was wonder grete and 28 strange. For pay hadd in paire oste X3 cartes ordaynd For pe werre, and grete multitude of Olyfantes3, wit towres of tree ou3 pame, stuffed wit fegetynge men. And sone after appom a day thir twa kynges wit paire osten3 mett samen3 32 on a faire felde, Darius wit his men, and Alexander wit his men.

1 Four lines with large cursive ornamental T of new type and decorative style.
The great battle between Darius and Alexander.

Than Alexander leapt upon his horse, pat highte Buciphalas, and rade furthe bi-fore all his ost(e), and hooned in pe myddes waye bi-twene te twa ostes. And when pe Percyenes saw hym, pay had grete wonder of hym, and ware rjste serde for hym, by cause he was so vggly. Neurepe-leesse pay tromped vp & went to-warde Alexander. And some pe batteff ioyned, & faghted to-gedir fersely, and many me(n) dyed on ayther party; pare was so thikke schott of arowes, pat pe ayer was couerde, as it had bane wit a clowde. Some faghtie wit swerdes, sum wit spere(s), sum wit axes, & sum wit arowes. Pe felde lay fulf of folke, sum dede, sum halsede, & sum greuusly wonden. Thay began for to faght to pe soÿ-rysenge, and faghted to pe soû-settyng.

Bot pare dyed many ma of pe perecyenes pan pare dide of Macedoyns.

And when Darius sawe his me(n) falle so thikke in pe felde, he lefte pe felde, and fledde, and pe perecyenes seyning that, pay fledde also. Bot paid paire cartes of warre rane amange pe perecyens & slewe of païn folke wit-owte nowmer & namely of fote-me(n). For by pat tym(e) it was myrke nyghte, and pay ne myȝte noȝte see for tift eschewe païn. When Darius come* to the foresaid watere he fande it froseñ, and ouer he went. And when he was ouer, pe opere lordes of perse went appoïn pe ysp, so grete a multitude pat pay couerde pe ysp fra pe ta(n) banke to pe top(e), & pat a grete brede, & pay onane pe ysp brake als sone als Darius was paste ouer, & all pat ware on pe ysp ware perischt(e), ilk a moder son, & drownede in pe water. Pe remanaunt, when pay come to the water, pay myȝte noȝte wyȝ tu ouer. And paid pe Macedoynes come, & dange païn downe. In this batefie pare was slaen of pe perecyenes cccm wit-owte(n) these pat were drowned.

Kynge Darius fledde to pe citee of Susis, & went in tiff his palace, & sefel downe to pe grounde, & sigheand & wepande wit a sare hert, he said thes wordes: ‘Alas, full wa es me, vnhappye wriche, pat euer I was borne, for pe ire & pe indignacio(n) of heue(n) es fallen one mee. For I Darius pat litte my selue(n) vp to pe sternes, Now am I broghte lawe to pe erthe. Now es Darius, pat conquerede all pe Este macyons, & made païn subiecte & tributaries vn-tiff hym, fayn(e) for to flee fra his enemys and submytte hym vn-to païn. And it ware

Alexander mounts Buciphalas and rides between the two armies. The Persians are afraid of his ugliness. The battle begins and lasts the day. The Persians lose more than the Greeks.

Darius flees and his flight causes the confusion of his army.

*Leaf 19

He crosses the ice, but his Lords are drown-ed in its breaking.

Darius flees to the city of Susa. He bewails his lot, for he is fallen from his greatness. He moral-izes on the present and future lives, and quotes sacred passages.
The letter of Darius to Alexander.

knawe a vn-to pe wreched man, what schulde falle till hym after-warde, he schulde hafe littit thoughte of pe tyme presentt, but one pe tyme to come solde his thoste be. In a poynte of a daye it falles, pat pe meke es raysede vp to pe clowde, and pe prowde es putt to noste.' And when he hade saide thir wordes, he rase vp, & satt & wraete a lettre vn-till Alexander, sayande on this wyse.

1 'Till his lorde kyng of Macedoyne, Darius, kyng 8 of Perse, gretyng & Joy. We hafe wele vndirstanden by pat that we hafe herde of 3owe and sene, pat 3e hafe in 3ow grete wysedom & a bye witt: so pat noste allanly 3e knawe thynge pat are present or passe, bot also thyngez pat ere 12 for to come, and pare-fore aff thyngez, pat 3e doo: 3e do it wit-owten any lakke or repreue. Neuer-pe-lesse hafez 3e in mynde pat rihte as wee ware, so ware 3e geten & borne of a fleschly womaD. And pare fore rayse noste 3our herte to hie 16 bi-cause of 3our provesc & 3our doghty dedis, so pat 3e forgete 3our laste ende. For ofte tymes we see pat pe lattere end of a man discordes wit pe firste. It su ifec 3i a wer-ryoure for to gete pe victore of his enemys, pofe ahi he 20 schewe noste affe pe malice pat he may. Remembre 3ow of pe wirchipful kyng 3eres oure progenytour, pat many victoreys gatt & schane in affe prosperitez, Be-fore he rayseD his hert in pride passande mesure. Affe pe wirchippe pat he hadd 24 wonD be-fore, he loste in Ellada, pare-fore remembre 3ow, pat aff pe wirchipes & pe victoreys pat 3e hafe geten by pe forluke of 2 godD

ye got this victory. To us then who beseech grant your 28 mercy. Yield us our mother, our sons, and wife, and we will render unto you the treasures we have in Aydem and Susa and Batram, the which our fathers hoarded and hid in earthen cellars. And we will give you the kingship of the Medes and 32 Persians, that thus ye may have and keep what victory Jove the all-mighty hath granted you.'

1 Four lines space with decorated minia-
ture T.
2 'by pe forluke of godD' is written at the bottom of leaf 18 bk. Between this leaf and what is now numbered leaf 20 a whole leaf is missing; and we are plunged into the middle of quite a different letter of Darius on leaf 20, which is addressed to Porus.
Alexander's answer. The burying-places of Persia.

51

How the Messengers of Darius Gave Alexander the Letter, and his Answer.

The messengers of Darius coming then to Alexander gave him the letter, which Alexander read soon before them all. Then one of his chieftains, called Parmerion, said to Alexander:

4 'Most mighty emperor, take all the wealth which Darius covenants unto thee, and give back to him his wife and sons.' And, hearing this, Alexander called to him the messengers of Darius, and before all spoke thus, saying: 'Tell ye to your emperor we wonder first that he misdeemed his mother, wife, and sons to be betrayed by our hands. If he be overcome, bid him not promise us a reward. If he bow himself to our yoke, all his honours and the majesty of God shall be laid bare to our sway. If he be not overcome, let him do us battle once again.' This said, he gave them rich gifts and sent them forth away. Then he bade the soldiers take up and gather the bodies of the dead and bury them in graves: and he bade them heal those that were wounded.

How Alexander Encamped by the Stream Grancus.

Then he encamped with his host by the stream of Grancus, and wintered there some days. And there he offered up victims to the gods. And about the river there were palaces, and they were 'the fairest, raised up with greatest skill, and Xerxes the King of the Persians had built them. Alexander, seeing them, bade them be burned. And soon after this, stirred by ruth, he gave word none should dare touch them. And there too was a most fair and very wide field in which the Kings and Deemsters of Persia were of old buried. And digging into this field the Macedonians found in the graves gemmed vases. And there they found the grave of Ninus the King of Assyria and Persia, which was hollowed out of a single amethyst, and engraven on the outside with palm-leaves and sundry kinds of birds. And so bright was the amethyst that even from the outside the man's body appeared whole. And in this place was a narrow and evil tower on which stood many men, some with cut legs, some with broken thighs, some with torn hands, and some blinded. They hearing...
Darius writes to Porus; the evil plot.

They beseech mercy of Alexander, who restore them to their own. For they were nobles dispossessed by Darius.

Darius' letter to Porus, King of India. He asks him again for help against Alexander, since he has resolved to fight to the very death. For it is better to die in the field than to see the end of his kingdom and people.

* Leaf 20.

Darius writes to Porus to succour him for the sake of himself, his dynasty, and his people, promising him help and the spoils of Alexander. He warns him that as Alexander had done to him, so would he done to Porus.

The noise of the armed men cried out to Alexander, who hearing their cries, bade them be taken thence. And seeing them was struck with ruth and wept, and bade each one be given ten thousand drachmas, and be restored every one to his own. For Darius kept them in prison, since they were of noble birth, and awarded all their possessions to his thralls. In the meantime the messengers from Alexander to Darius told all that Alexander had said. And Darius hearing this began to get ready for the fight. And he wrote another letter to Porus King of India, which runneth as follows:

The Letter sent by Darius to Porus King of India.

'Darius King of the Persians to Porus King of Our Indians joy. We asked but lately of you, and again we ask you to come and help against those who strive to overthrow our palace. We know well also that the like harm will light on you. For this Alexander, who fighteth thus, hath an unquenchable and wild soul, which like a lion ceaseth not, and is like the sea when stirred by mighty winds. Furthermore, unwillingly though it be, we have gathered numberless races, and we have taken our counsel to fight with him to the very death.

* better vs es for to dy manly in pe selde þan for to see þe mescheff of oure pople & þe dissolacion of oure rewme. Whare-fore, hafand reward and compassion of oure dise, we be-seeke 30w, þat þe late oure prayers sattell in 3our hert, 24 & helpe for to succour vs now at oure nede, hafand in 3oure mynde þe grete noblaye of oure progenyntours. And I seure 30w þat [1 sall] gisfe ilke a fote-maþ þat comþ wit 30w, thre þeceþ of golde, And ilke a horse-maþ, fye þeceþ of golde, 28 And also mete & dryneke ynoghe to 30w & all 30w men. And whare so þe lugge 30w, we schaffe þynde 30w a hundreth & fourscore tentes curiously wroghte. And also we schaff gysfe 30w Alexander horse Buktyphalas, and affe appairai, 32 & þe araye þat langes tiff Alexander halley schaff þe 3ours and also aff þe spoylle of his folke saff be dalte amaneg3 30oure folke. Where-fore we beske 30w þat also saff als this
The slaying of Darius.

53

lettre commes to sow, 3e haste sow tiff vs in all pat 3e may. For wite 3e wele for certayne, that rīȝt als he done tiff vs, so he purpose hym in tyme commynge for to do to sowe.'

1In the men tyme, certane meīn of Darius went fra hym & come tiff Alexander, & talde hym, pat Darius purposede hym for to fegte wit hym eftesones, and had sent tiff Pors, kyng of Iude, for to come in grete haste, for to helpe hym. 8 When Alexander herd pis, be-lyfe he removed his Oste to ward Darius, thynnand in his herte pat he wolde on na wyse take apon hym pe name of Empourer be-fore he hadd wonn Darius and his rewme one werre. And when Darius herde of pe commynge of Alexander, he dredd hym greetly & pe percyenes also. Bot þare was two prynce of Darius, of pe whilke pe tane highte Bisso & pe toper Ariobarsantes, thir twa where þair 2 herd of pe commynge of Alexander, conspyred to-gedir for to slaa þaire lord Darius, supposyng for tiff hafe a grete thanke of Alexander, and a greet reward for þaire dede. And ather of þam ware swornne tim òfer. And þain þay went to þe kynges palace, and come intil his chamber wit drawen swerdes in þaire handes, and fand Darius bi hym ane. And when Darius saw that, he trowed wele pat þay wolde sla hym, And said vn-to þam: 'Dere frendes, hedir to warde, hafe I called sow my serenaundes, bot now I call sow my lorde. What ayles sow at me pat 3e will sla me? Hæs Alexander cheriste þe macedoyes mare þam I hafe done sow? Hafe I nöȝte sorow & disese ynoghe of enemyse wit-owtten? Bot if 3e conspire agaynes me for to sla me wit owtten gilt, I say for sothe, & 3e sla me * thus preuelye, And Alexander may gete sow, he will take mare cruell vengeance one sow, thei on any theenes. For sothely it es na comforthe ne lykyng tiff ane Empourer to fynd an oper Empourer murthered wit his awen meīn.' Bot þay were na-thynge stirrede to petee, ne tendernessse, ne mercy, thurgh his worde, Bot went tiff hym and wit grete cruellnesse smate hym, & al-to magle hym, and went faste þaire waye, & lefte hym for dede.

36 3And when Alexander herd telf pat Darius was slayne he Alexander hearing of this through treachery marches against Darius.

Two nobles of Darius conspire to slay him that they may have reward of Alexander.

Darius seeing them begs for mercy, and foretells the future vengeance of Alexander. But they slay him.

*Leaf 20 bk.

Alexander hearing of

1 Five lines space with a capital I.
2 MS. þair for þay, just as on leaf 34.
3 cf. Icelandic þéir. There is no mis-
   take here, as the two spellings vary þaire
   and þair on leaves 34, 54.
3 Four lines with red capital A.
Alexander comes to Darius.

his death enters
Susa without resistance.
The conspirators hide themselves.

Alexander goes to the room where Darius lies dying.

Alexander has pity on Darius and promises him all he once had if he will but live.

Alexander says he would rather give his own Empire to Darius than behold him dead.

* Leaf 21.

Darius embraces Alexander.

Darius' speech to Alexander on the worthless and unsteadfastness of
went over the water of Graunt, and all his Oste with him, and come to the cete of Susis. And allone all the persyennes saw hym, Thay Opened the gates of cete, & rescheyned hym with grete wirchipe. And when he pryncez pat slewe Darius wiste 4 pat Alexander was come in into the cete pay went & helde pay in hidils ay till pay myyte gete knaweynge of Alexander wilt, as towchand pat that pay hadd done to Darius. Alexander pay went in into the kynges Palace, and as he went pare in he 8 merueyled hym gretel of pay biggyng pare off. For Cirus pay kyng of Perse gert bigg it rayally. And the pament pareoff was made of stanes of dyverse colours, & pe walles aff enueround wit fyne golde & precyous stanes & sternes lyke to pe firmament, 12 and pelers of golde pat bare vp pe werke. When Alexander saw all this curious werke, he meruaileth hym greatly. And thau he went to pe chambre pare Darius laye halfe dede.

And allone all he saw hym he hadd grete rewthe & compassion 16 of hym, and he tukke off his awen manth & couerd hym pare wit, & went and graped his wondes and wepid for hym ript tenderly, & said un till hym. 'Rise vp, sir Darius,' quop he, ' & be of gude comforthe. And als frely as ever pou reioysede thy 20 Empire, so mot pou jitt do, And be als myghty, & als gloryouse als ever pou was. I swere the here by oure mystie goddes & by pe faythe in my body, pat here I resigne vn to the all thyn empyre, desyranth souerningly for to hafe pe lyfe of the, as pe 24 so of the Fader, For seckerly it es vnstetand & unsemly till an emperour for to be reioysede of an oper emperours mescheffe & disesse, whenfortune base forsake hym. Telle me, sir, what pay are pat hase thus farein with the, and I sewre pay als I am 28 trew man I safit venge the to pe uttereste.' And * when Alexander had saith this & mekith mare, Sare weand Darius putt furthe his hande, and layde his arme abowte Alexander nekke, and kyssed his breste, his nekke, & his hande, & saide 32 thir worde, thare that here folowes. 2 'A, dere sooth Alexander,' quop he, 'als thi heghe witt knawes wele, all this werlde es corupt and set in malice. For pe souerayne forluke of godd, all thyngez knawande fra pe begynnyn, and hafand felyng 36 of pe wyrkyngez for to come, made man in that wyse, at pe

1 pe is written in above the line in the MS.

2 Four lines miniature with ornamented red capital A.
begynnynge, pat nathyng es in hym stable ne faste. So pat ait
thynges; pat ere passande & werldely, fra pat he faile of
gouvernance, tournes alsoh tiff hym in contrarye. For if godde
had ordeneid ait thynges esy to man and alwaye wit-owtten
chanungynge sent hym prosperitee, main schulde be lyftede vp
so hie in pryde & in anye glorye, pat he solde no3te arett aithe
his wele-fare & his welthe vn-to goddei bot tiff his awen9i desert
& his awen9i vertu. And so schulde mei gas fra paire makare.
On pe toper if pe hegte wyssedom of goddei had made
pe werde ou9 pat wyse pat aii illes and infelicytes felt apoi9 main
wit-owtten any maner of gudenesse, so many frecketse sulde folow
pe kynde of man, pat we schulde ait be drawen in-to pe gilder
do disparacion, so pat we solde hase na triste in pe gudnes of
goddei. And paretore grete goddei wolde so wisely skitte ait
thynges, pat, when9 a main fult of felicitee, thurgh his hegte
pride wiff no3te knawe his makare, Fra pe heghte of pride in-to
pe pitte of mekenes & lawnes he mo9 be plungede. So pat he
pat thurgh pride & felicite forgatt his goddei; thurgh fallynge
wrechdeess & disesse hase mynde of his goddei. Reghte als pou
may see bi me, my dere so9 Alexander, pat was rasynde vp so
hye in pride & anye glorye, thurgh riches & prosperitee pat
feile vn-to me, pat I trowed no3te pat I was goddes creature
bot goddes Felawe. And p9, thurgh blyndeness of pride,
I couthe no3te see that, pat now, thurgh scharpenesse of mekenes
and mescheffe, I see clerely & knawes. Bot if it happen pat any
main be vmbilappede wit grete infilicitee, so pat he, despairand
of pe grace of goddei; supposse na remedy, ne nane lukes eftere;
* main ourde lorde goddei rases hym vp to pe heghte of prosperitee,
so pat pa9 he, pat bi-cause of wrechdnes & infilicitee, my3te
no3te see goddei ne knawe hym, thurgh felicite & prosperitee
knowes pat he, pat may bryng a main to lawe state, may rayse
a main tiff hegte degree. And he pat may rayse a main tiff
hegte degree, may putt hym to lawnesse agayne, when hym lyst,
and pare-fore, so9, late no3te thy hert rysse to hye in pride, for pe
victoryes pat goddei hase sent the, if ait pou may do now whate pe
list rjst as [1 pou] were a goddei. Bot alway thyynke on thy haste
ende. For pou ert a deddy main, and ilk a day if pou be-halde
graythely pou may see thy dedd bi-fore thy9i eghne. Consedirs
with par-
ticular
application
to him-
self.

On the pre-
sumption of those
who have

On the pow-
er of God to put
down the mighty
from their
seats, and
to lift up
them of
low degree.

1 pou may have been left out by the scribe beginning a new line.
Darius dies. His burial.

Darius asks burial of Alexander, and that both peoples should come there-to. And whilst there-to that both empires be one. He bids him be merciful to his widow, and take his daughter Roxana to wife. He dies.


The throne of seven steps with its mystic meanings inwrought.

1 it written in above by the scribe.
2 Two lines space with miniature A.
3 'vii' occurs at the end of one line, and 'seven' at the beginning of the next.
The throne of seven steps.

pare-to, whare-by kynges ascended pare-to. And thir greee were made wonder craftily & curiously. The firste gree was of ane amatist. The seconde gree was of a Smaragd. The thirde

gree was of a Topaz. The ferthe gree was of a granat. The

fifte was of ane Adamande. The sext was of fyn golde. And the seuente was of clay. And thay ware no3t 1 [wit-o]wetten grete cause3 ordeyned one pis wyse.

8 For pe firste gree w[as a]jne 2 amatist, for amange all oper stanes it hase this vertu, that it represse & halde; done pe sumosite of wyne & pe myghte pare-offe, & suffers no3te a man pat bere it 3 oih hym be troubled in his witt ne in his mynde thurgh drownkeness. And, on pe same wise, solde ilke a kyng be of perfite Witt & mynde, & thurgh nane occasion do na mysse. The second' gree was of a Smaragd; pe whille clarifyes & kep3 pe sighte of hym pat beres [it] apoi'n hym, and so schulde 1 a kyng hafe clere sighte of his hert, wysely for to see 2 & discerne that pat es spedfull & profitable bathe for hym selfe & pe conomo profit. The third' gree was of a Topaz, pe whille es so clere, pat & a man bi-halde hym selfe pare-in, it salt seme till hym, as hisched ware towernde downwarde, and his fete vpwarde; And it be-takenes pat a kyng schulde alway take hede till his laste ende. The ferthe gree was of a Granat whilk passe; all manere of precious stanes in reedness: & betakens 4 pat a kyng sull be schamfull for till consent till any thynge pat es vnleuff. The fifte was of ane Adamande. Pe Adamande es so harde pat it may no3te be broken nowper with yren ne wil stane, bot if it firste be enpoynted wit gayte blode. On pe same wyse a kyng sull be of so grete constance & sadnesses pat, for na prayere, ne for na worldely gude, he solde no3te bewgh fra pe way of ryght-wisnesse. The sexte gree was of fyn golde: for rige3 as gold passe; all maner of metalle in betwee, & in pre-

32 ciouste; rige3 so a kyng awe to be 4 preferred before oper men & gouernours of pam. 5 Pe seuent was of Clay, till pat entent pat a man pat es raysed vp to pe dingnyte of a kyng sulde alway vmbythynk hym pat he was made of erthe, at pe laste

The first step of amethyst, that a king be not drunken but walk soberly and steadfastly. The second of emerald, that a king see well those things which be long to his rank. The third of topaz, which reminds him of his latter end, showing him upside down. The fourth of garnet, which makes him shame to do unlawfully. The fifth of diamond, which means that a king should be righteous. The sixth of gold, to show the greatness of kings.

* Leaf 22 bk.

The seventh of clay, to

1 Piece gone in MS. Reads —wattered.

The beginning of a w occurs before the hole, and the latter half of an o after it— so it must clearly be read 'wittedten'.

2 MS. w and a gap follows as above; read, of course, 'was a'.

3 it written in above line.

4 MS. has in another hand in bottom of margin 'preferred before' written over again.
Alexander's letter to all countries.

show him above all he is but dust and deathly.

Alexander's letter to all lands—announcing that he sits on the throne of Darius. He orders that all things should be as they were before.

He commands security of tenure to all, and free trade between Helias and all Persia. Alexander promises a fitting reward to them that slew Darius.

They declare themselves.

* Leaf 23.

Alexander bids them be taken to be erthe he saith agayne. When Alexander was sette upon this trone, coronnde with his diadem, & pe Macedoynes & pe persenes standingy aaboute hym: be-fore paim alle he gert write a lettre till all cuntrie3, pat was of this tenour.

1 ' Alexander the son of godd Alexander and quene Olympias kyng of kynges & lorde of lorde, till alle Dukes, Prynce3, Erles, Barouns, maisters, & till alle pe folke3 of Perse: ioy & grace. Send it es plesyng to godd, pat I sitt one pe trone of Darius, & be 8 lorde of pe persyenes, grete cause I have for to be reioyist gretely pare-offe, ne were it for pe greet multitude of folke pat ere slayne. Bot send it so es pat godd hase oderynede me to be your lorde,2 and you governour, pare-fore we commande 30w pat in 12 ilke a citee, thurghowte pe lordchipe of Perse, 3e oderyne prynce3 and governours as pare was in Darius tyme, to pe whilke we commande 30w pat 3e be obeyande as 3e before-tymes hafe bene, and that pay do ristte till ilke a man in pat pare powere. 16 Also it es oure wilt and our commandement, pat ilke a man welde & reioyse paysably his landes and his possessiouns. We commande alsoo, pat fra this lande of perse vn-till Ellada, & fra thethyin to Macedoyne, be redy way & open so pat ilke a man 20 pat wilt may passe bathe in and owte, wit merchandyse or any oper erandes pat pay hafe at do, and Joy & pese be vn-to 3owe.'

2 Pan gert Alexander all men be stille, and said one this wyse: ' Whilke of 3ow so slew myd enemy Darius; come3 forthe the be-for 24 me, and I shal gift 3ow worthy mede, & conable wirchipe do pam, I swere bi oure godde3 pat ere Almytys, & bi my moste biloved moder Olympias, pat I saith gyffe pam worthy mede.' When Alexander had saide thir wordes pe persyenes wepede 28 wonderly sare. And than3e twa mañ-morthireres Bisso and Aryobarzantes come bi-fore Alexander, and sayde vn-till hym: ' Wirchipuff emperour,' quo3 pay, ' we ere thase pat slew Darius thynye enemy wit oure Aveno bende.' And when3e Alexander saw pam, he bade his knyghtes belyfe ga & take pam, & bynde * pam, & lede pam to Darius grafte, & pare smyte of pare heuedes. And than3e pay anserd, & saide vn-till Alexander: ' A, A, wirchipuff emperour,' quo3 pay, 36 of 'pe persyenes', but it has been erased by the scribe.

3 Three lines space with red capital P.
He punishes the murderers of Darius.

'swore pou noȝte tiȝt vs, bi oure godeȝ of Almyȝty, & bi pe hele of thi moder Olympias, pou solde gerre do vs na harme, bot pou solde giȝt vs a worthi reward.' And Alexander saide agayne vn-to þam: 'So aughte me wele for to swere, for to gette knawyng of þe slaers of Daris. For I solde neuer hafe getyn knawyng þære-offe had I noȝte sworne so. And zitt I saȝt safe myȝ athel wele wynoghe. For it was al-way myȝ entent, þat if I myȝte wete what þay ware, þay solde hafe swilke a warre. For þay þay slaes þaire awemȝ lorde it es a taken þat þay wille hafe na conscience to sla anoper manic.' And when þe persyenes herde this þay by-gaȝ to prayse Alexander & to commende hym and blyssé hym as he had bene a god. Þan kyn Alexander gert hede tha twa homycydes. And aft þe rewme he sett in gouernance of certayne lorde. Amanges oper þære was ane alde lorde was eme to Daris, þe whilke highte Climitas, þat was gretly lufted wiþ þe persyenes; And Alexander at þe request of all the persyenes ordeyned hym for to be chefe gouernour vnder hym of all perse. And on þe morne Alexander sett hym in his trone, wit his corouȝ on his hede, and efter þe biddynge of Daris he commande to bryngë bi-fore hym Rosan, Daris doghter, wit a corouȝ on her hede, sett ful of precious stanes. And þære, as þe maner was of þe persyenes, he take hir to his wyfe, and made hir to sitt wiþ hym in his trone & command aþt meyn to wirchipe hir als quene. And þan þe persyenes were wonderly glade, & onane þay broȝte þaire godeȝ bi-fore Alexander, and bi-gaȝ to wirchipe hym, & loue hym riȝte als he hade bene a god; and said vn-till hym, halley wit a voyce, 'þou thi selfe es a god, For that þat es plesande tiȝt oure goddes alway þou dose.' And wheþ Alexander saw this, he was gretly troubled & riȝte ferde & said vn-to þam: 'Wirchipuȝ sirs,' quop he, 'I pray ȝow þat ȝe wirchipe me noȝte as a god, for sothely I am as ȝe are, a corrupteble & a dedly man, and in me þære es na parceȝ of the godhede. And þærefor, I beséke ȝow, cesseȝ of this wirchipe þat ȝe do me.'

1 Þan gert Alexander write a lettre tiȝt Olympias his moder & tiȝt Aristotle his maister, makand menecynd of aþt þe bathyfalls & þe disesseȝ þat he had suffred in Perse, and of þe grete reches and be-headed. They plead his own words. But it avails them nought.

They are slain. Alexander makes Daris' uncle governor of the Persians.

Alexander wedz Roxana, Daris' daughter.

The Persians worship Alexander as a god.

He chides them for it.

Alexander writes to his mother and to Aristotle.

1 Five lines with large capital P.
He com-
*leaf 23
bk.
mands an
eight days' 
feast for 
the 
mari-
gage
Porus of 
India,
through
waste
country,
with great
rivers and
caverns.
The Macedo- 
ians murmur at
the con-
tinued
wars and
marches,
and against
Alexander's
ambition.
They fear
would
leave him.

King Alex-
ander divides the 
Macedo-
ians and the
Persians.
Alexander rebukes the
Greeks
that they
would
leave him
alone with
rebellious
Persians.
He reminds
them of
what he
has done

\[ ^{1} \text{ Four lines with miniature A with a }
\] with a

\[ ^{2} \text{ barrel drawn within on its side, and a tree }
\]

The march against Porus.

\[ ^{1} \text{ After this kyng Alexander sembled a grete Oste, bathe of }
\] macedoyns & of persyenes, and went towarde Inde for to werre
apoun Porus, kyng of Inde, pe whilke ordeynede hym for to 8
come & helpe kyng Darius. And, when Alexander was entered
in-tiff Inde, he went thurgh wilderness & waste cunteer, whare
in ware grete rewers and many grete canes & cauneres. And
\[ ^{2} \text{ pe prynces of macedoyns & of grece murmourede amang}\]
\[ ^{3} \text{e pa}\]
\[ ^{4} \text{ grety, & saide ilk}\]
\[ ^{5} \text{n tilf oper: 'It myyte hafe sufficed tilf vs, }
\] \[ ^{6} \text{ pat we hafe ouer-sett kyng Darius, & congerred pe kyngdom}
\] \[ ^{7} \text{ of Perse. Where-be seke we forthire in-tiff Inde, pe whilke es }
\] \[ ^{8} \text{ fullt of Wilde bestes; & leues oure awenn lande. Ne pis }
\] \[ ^{9} \text{ Alexander nane oper thyng}\]
\[ ^{10} \text{e desyre3, bat for to wende abowte}
\] \[ ^{11} \text{ and thurgh werre to bryngye ait pe worlde vndere his subieccion. }
\] \[ ^{12} \text{ For werre & debate unresche\text{\textregistered} his body so fer furth pat, }
\] \[ ^{13} \text{ and he 20 }
\] \[ ^{14} \text{ ristede any lange tyme witownte werre, rithe als it were for }
\] \[ ^{15} \text{ defaute of mete he schulde faile & dye. Leue we hym purefore, }
\] \[ ^{16} \text{ and turne we agayne vn-tiff oure awenn cunteer, and late }
\] \[ ^{17} \text{ hym wende furthe wit the persyenes, if he wiiff.' When 24 }
\] Alexander herde pis, he garte ait pe Oste habide, and he
\[ ^{18} \text{ went and stodde in ane heghe place amang}\]
\[ ^{19} \text{e pa}\]
\[ ^{20} \text{ & sayde one this wise: 'Departis 30w in twaa, so pat pe }
\] \[ ^{21} \text{ persyenes be }
\] \[ ^{22} \text{ by pa}\]
\[ ^{23} \text{ selve }
\] \[ ^{24} \text{ and pe Macedoyns and pe grekes bi pa}\]
\[ ^{25} \text{ selve.' 28 And when pa hadd' so done, Alexander saide to pe }
\] \[ ^{26} \text{ Macedoyns and pe grekes }
\] \[ ^{27} \text{ 'A A, myne owenn dere knightis, quop he, }
\] \[ ^{28} \text{ 'wele [3e] knawe pat thir persyenes, vn-to pis day, hase bene contra-
}\]
\[ ^{29} \text{ry & rebelles vn-to 30w & to me, and 36 wiiff now lefe me 32 }
\] \[ ^{30} \text{ here wit pa}\]
\[ ^{31} \text{ & tourne agayne to your awenn cunteer. Wele }
\] \[ ^{32} \text{e wate, pat when your hertes were troublede, & fered; for pe }
\] \[ ^{33} \text{ wordes pat ware contenid in Darius letters, I throug my speche }
\] \[ ^{34} \text{ & my consell comforted your hertis. And afterwarde, when we 36 }
\] \[ ^{35} \text{ come in-to pe felde agaynes oure enemies, I went bi-fore 30w ait.
}
Alexander exHORTS his mutinous armY.

And I by mynde ane was þe firste man pat entrede þe batayle. And ȝitt more-ouer, as ȝe wele wate, I tuke apone me for to be ȝoure allere messangere vn-to kyngge Dariones. And þære, for ȝow, I putt my selfe in many grete * perifts. And þærefore, wittete wele for certayne, þat, riȝte as hedir-towardeȝ, we hafe ouercomen our enemies and hafe þe better of þam, riȝte so fro hepein-forwardes, thurgh þe helpe of oure goddeȝ we saȝt ouer-s come oure enemies, & hafe þe victorie of þam. And þærefore I say ȝow forsothe, þat, alle if þe will tourne agaye to grece & macedoyne, I saȝt noȝte tourne agaye oþ na wyse, þat þe may knawe þat, wit-outte governance of a kyngge, nane Oste may 12 wyne na wirchipe.' When Alexander had saȝt þus, alle þe prynceȝ of Macedoynye and of þe grekes schamede gretel, and askede mercy & forgifnesse, sayande one this wyse: 'Moste wirchipsful þe mperor, oure lyfe lyes hallely in þou hande. 16 Whedir so ouer ȝe will goo we will gladly felowe ȝou hye maiestee; þoȝe we schulde all dye for ȝow oþ a daȝe, we saȝt folow ȝow & neuer lefe ȝow.' And þaþ þay remowede fra þeiȝne1 and come in-tilt a cuntree of Inde þat es called Phisianes, in þe laste ende of July. And þære mette þym þe embassatours of Porus kyng of Inde, and broghte þym lettres fra Porus, þat said oþ this wyse.

Porus kyng of Inde: vn-to þe theesle Alexander, þat thurgh 24 thifes & robbery many citeȝ wynneȝ, biddyng we send. Sei þou ertz dedely: wharto weneȝ þou þat þou ertz of powere to agaynstande goddþat es vn-dedely. A grete folke, me thinke, þou ertz þat hase eghe, and cane nott see. Trowes þou we be lyke 28 vn-to þe percyenes þat þou hase made subiecteȝ vn-to the? þou hase foughtene hedir-towarde wit softe meyn & cowardeȝ, & for þou hase ouercomen þam, þou weneȝ, þat thi lilitillness saȝf bryngye oure hye maiestee vnder thi subiecciion; þe whilke es 32 vnposyble for to bee, bot if goddeȝ submytt þam vn-to meyn, Þeþeerth be euyn lyke to þe heueiȝ. I late the wiete, þat I may noȝte be ouercomen for noȝte allany meyn bot also goddeȝ doeȝ servyce to my name. Wate þou noȝte wele, þat ayn 36 Dynise, þe fader of Bachus, come in-tilt Inde, wit a grete Oste for to feghte, bot oþane he tournedede þe bakke & flegȝ; for he for them, and what they will do togethër.

They become ashamed of themselves and beg for forgive-ness.

They continue their march and meet the ambas- sadors of Porus.

Porus' letter to Alexander.

He tells him of the superiority of the Indians to the Persi-ans.

The gods also fight for India. The Indians overcame Dionysius.

---

1 MS. reads þeiȝe.
2 Four lines space for miniature P. P written in the page beside it.
Alexander comforts his knights. His letter to Porus.

He advises him to go back again to Macedonia.
Before Xerxes' time the Macedonians gave tribute to India, but the Indians recked.

* Leaf 24 bk.
aught of Macedonia, for it was a barren and little land.
Alexander's knights are troubled at the letter.

He tells them.
Eastern folks are like wild beasts trusting but in their strength.

Alexander's letter to Porus. Porus' words have stirred on the Greeks to win so great and fruitful a land as India, as well as to crush Porus' pride.

For Porus is but a was not of powere to agaynstande the vertu of men of Inde. And paretore, or any scheme or mischefe com to be; we consent the & commandez the, pat in affe pat haste pat pou may, pou tourne home agayne to thynne awen lande. Fore wele pou 4 knowes, pat, bi-fore verses was kyngne of Perse, pe macedoynes gaffe tribute till Inde. Bot, by-cause pat paire lande es barayne & vnprofitable, & na thynge3 per-in plesande tiff a kyngne: pe men of Inde sett notye pare-by. For ilke a man, 8 desyres mare a large lande & a plenteuous: pan *a straye lande & a barayne. And paretore, 3itt the thirde tourne, I commaunde the that pou tourne home to thynne awen lande. And never, in this lyfe, couette to hase Lordschipe pare pou may none gete.'

1 When pis lettre was comen till Alexander, he gerte rede it be-before aff men. And when his knyghtis hadde herde pe tenour of pis lettre, pay were tribulde. And Alexander sayde vn-to pane: 'My wirchipfull knyghtis,' quod he, 'late notye your 16 hertis be tribulde ne fered for Porus lettre. Hafe ye notye in mynde, wit how grette pride Darius wrate vn-tiff vs dyserese tymes? I say sow sotheley pat all ye folke of thysse Este parties hase paire hertis & paire wittis lyke vn-to pe bestes pat paye dueile wit-aff, pat es at say, Tygres, Paris, & oper wilde bestis, whilke full seldeere slaen of men, and pare-forre paye triste aff in paire strengthe.' And when Alexander hade said this wordes, he garte writte a lettre vn-to Porus kyngne of Inde 24 whare-of this was the tenour.

2 Kyng of kynges and lorde of lorde, Alexander pe son of godde Amoide & pe quene Olympias, vn-to Porus we sende. Pou hase scharpede oure wittes, & gyffeus vs hardynesse for to feghtte 28 agaynes pe, whare pou says pat macedoynes es bot a litty of lande & barayne of aff thyng pat gude es. And Inde, pou says, es large, & plenteuous of aff gude3 & reches. And pare-forre we saifi enforce vs to feghtte wit the at aff oure myghte, for to con-32 quere thi landet3 pat, pou sais, es so fulf of reches. And, for pou halde3 vs pouer, & of na reputacioïn, pare-forre we desire for to ascende to pe heghte of thi majestie. And also pare pou says, pat notye allanly vn-to meï, bot also vn-to godde3 pou erte 36 emperour, I saifi come to the, for to feghtte wit pe, as wit an

1 Three lines with miniature W and small w written alongside in the margin. 2 Eleven lines blank space without either miniature or small letter at side.
The battle with Porus' army.

hayth'en man full of Pompe & pride and vayne glory, & noȝte as wit a goddi. For all pe werlde may noȝte 1 agaynstand pe wretthe of a goddi. Per-fore, seyn pe elementis of this aere, pat es at say Thaunners, leuenuynges and water, may noȝte bere pe indygnaclion of godde3, how schulde paids dedely með move agaynstande paire wretthe? And paire-fore I late the * wele witte pat pa founde prounde speche trubble3 me noȝte ne moveȝ me neuer a dele.'

2 WhenPorus hadde this lettre, he was wondere wrathe & assembled a grete Oste of meid, and a grete multitude of Olyphanates wit pe whilk pe meï of Inde were wont for to feghe, and went agaynses Alexander. This Oste of Porus was 13grete & strange, for pare ware per in xiiiij. cartes of were and viij2 Olyphanates, and ilk an Olyphante had a toure of tree apoiñ his bakke, & in ilke a toure xxx meï. Pare ware also 16 opher feghting meï on horse and on fote wit-owten nowmer. And when pe Macedoynes and pe persyenes sawe pe grete multitude bathe of meï & of Olyphanates, ñay were fered, & gretely stonyde. Neuer pe lesse, bathe pe parties ordayed20 païn to bateï, and arayed' paire bateis, Alexander on his syde, and Porus on his syde. And Alexander lepe vp-oïn his horse Buktiphalas & prikkede bi-fore ali his meï, and comanded3; pat pe Medoynes & pe persyenes sulde firste begyn to feghe. 24 And so ñay did; & hym selve wit pe grekes, and pe Macedoynes stode on pe tober syde, redy to succor païn when mystey ware. And for pe Olyphanat3e also, Alexander gert make suylkke aû ordynance. He gert make xxiiij ymage3 of brasse, and gert sull 28 païn full of dry wodde. And he gert make also cartes of yreïn, for to bere thir ymage3 before pe Olyphanat3e and when pe Ost3e came nere to-gedir he gert sette fyre in pe wodd' pat was in pe ymage. And when pe Olyphanat3e saw pir ymage3, ñay wende pat ñay hadde bene meï and schott owte païre groynes, as ñay were wont for to do for tiff hase weryed païn. And alsone thûgh pe grete het, ñay were brynned and thàn thay gaffie bakke, & folded' for drede to brynne paire groynes. And 36 pare-fore pe meï ñay pat were abowen in pe toures myghte noȝte wydv to for to feghe. And when Porus saw that he was reghte

1 agaynstand written in the margin, with a mark of insertion over against it in the text. 2 Four lines space with red capital W. Small w in margin next it.
The allies begin the battle and fight for thirty days. When exhausted they are repelled.

* Leaf 15 bk.
placed by the Greeks and Macedonians.
Utter defeat of the Indians and flight of Porus.

The walls were plated with gold an inch thick.

The palace gates were of ivory and ebony.

The wonders of the hall. The golden birds that sang as though alive.

The palace of Porus.

The allies begin the battle and fight for thirty days. When exhausted they are repelled.

* Leaf 15 bk.
placed by the Greeks and Macedonians.
Utter defeat of the Indians and flight of Porus.

The palace of Porus.

The allies begin the battle and fight for thirty days. When exhausted they are repelled.

* Leaf 15 bk.
placed by the Greeks and Macedonians.
Utter defeat of the Indians and flight of Porus.

The palace of Porus.

The allies begin the battle and fight for thirty days. When exhausted they are repelled.

* Leaf 15 bk.
placed by the Greeks and Macedonians.
Utter defeat of the Indians and flight of Porus.
Alexander and the Queen of the Amazons.

when Porus liste, thir fewles thurgh craftes of music walde
syng after paire kynde askede & was. He made also in pat
Palace veselles wit-outen nowmer, sum of golde, sum of Cristaffe,
4 sum of oper maneres of precyouse stanes, sum of Sulure, and
pat all maner of veselt pat men sulde be serued offe. Bot pare
were bot fewe of pan of Silure.

1 Fra thethye, Alexander remowede his Oste & come to pe
s5 yates of Capec, and pare he lugged hym. It was a noble lande
& a gude. Bot pare ware pare-In many maners * of nedders
and of wilde beste3. Fra peine Alexander sent a lettre till
Talifride quene of Amazonë, of pis tenour.

12 'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordes, Alexander, pe son of
godë Amonë, & pe quene Olympias, vn-to Talifride pe quene
of Amazonë, joy. The grete Batayllës pat we hafe hadd wit
kyng Darius, & how we hafe conquered all his rewme, and his
lordchipes, we trowe be noghte unknawen vn-to 30w. And also
how we hafe foughten with Porus pe kyng of Inde & his cheesse
citee wonnen. And also wit many oper folkes, & pay ware
neuer of powere to agaynestande vs, pe whilke we suppose
be no3te unknawen vn-to 30we. Whare-fore we sende 30w
worde, & commande3 30w, pat 3e sende vs tribute, if 3e witt pat
wee comë no3te to 30w to do 30w disesse.'

And vn-to this lettre Talifride made answere by lettre one this
24 wyse.

3 Talyfride quene of Amazonë wit oper grete ladys of oure
rewme, vn-till Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, joy. We hafe
wele herde telle of pe lye wit pat es in the, thurgh whilke pou
28 hase in mynde thyngës pat ere passede, and dispose3 thynges
pat ere present, and knauës thyngës pat ere to come. Ayse
the wele parefore are pou come tiff vs, what trebulacionës
& disesse may falle the in thi commynge. For pare was neuer
32 nane 3it pat werreyed agayne3 vs pat ne he hadd schame pare-
offe at pe ende. And pare-fore take hede to thi last ende. For
grete schame it es tiff a wyse maud thurgh indisereion falle
in mescheffe. Bot if it be lykyng to pe, to knawe our con-
36 uersacyon, & oure habitacion, we declare it vn-to pe be oure

1 Three lines with miniature capital F and small f beside in the margin.
2 Four lines with ornate capital K and small k in margin beside.

The riches of the treasury.
There is but little silver.

* Leaf 36.

Alexander's letter to the Queen of the Amazons mentioning his victories and demanding tribute.

The answer of the Queen of the Amazons. She has heard of his victory. She warns him of the danger of attacking the Amazons.

She describes their land

12 Twelve lines space for miniature which is lacking. Written in the margin is 'Regina Talibus cum duabus antantibus'.

5
and their manners. They are in an island girdled round by a river. The men dwell on the other side of the river. How they breed their kind.

* Leaf 26 bk.

How they ride to war.

Their husbands honour them at their return. They will fight Alexander, who will get no honour through victory over women, but rather if he be overthrown, to the women shall it be great honour, to him great shame. Alexander laughs and sends them another letter, telling them that he has conquered three parts of the world and never been withstood.

present letters, patoure habitation es in ane Ile, pat es closede abowte wit a grete reuer pat nother hase bygynynge nor endymynge. Bot on a syde we hafe a strayte entree. And thenowmer of women pat duelle3 per-in es cexiiiim pat ere noste 4 filed wit men. For our husbands duelle3 noste amang3 vs ne no nother ma3n, Bot on pe toper syde of pe reuer. And ilke a 3ere we make a solemne feste in the wirchipe of Iubiter xxx days. And par3 we go till our husbands, and duelle3 8 wit par3 oper xxx days & hase our luste and our disporte *-to-gedir as kynde askes. And if any of vs consayfe & bere a childe if it be a male pe modere kepis it serene 3ere and than sendez it to pe fadere. And if scho bere a mayden 12 childe pe modere halde3 it wit hir & techez 3 it our maners. When we goo to werre agayne 3oure enemys we ere em rydand* one horse wele armede. And sun3 of vs hase bowes & arowes, and sun3 speres, and oper diuerse wapyne. And pe remanent 16 kepe3 oure Ile. And when we come wit the victorye oure husbands does vs grete wirchipe. And pare-fore if you come agaynes vs we late the witt pat we will feghte wit the at all our myste. And if it happen pat you have pe victory of vs, 20 wirchipe salt it nane be to the bi-cause you hase discomfit women. And if we discomfit the, it salt be an heghe wirchippe tiff vs, pat we may discomfit so wirchipfult an emperour; and to the it salt be a hye reprovre. Where-fore we sygnifie vn-to 24 pe by oure lettres pat you come noste agaynes vs for sekerly pare may grete dyssene come pare-offe, pat peraunture you knawe3 noste now offe at pis tymme."

When Alexander hadd* redd* pis lettre, he began to lawghe. 28 And onane he garte wratte another lettre, and sent it to Talyfride, whare-offe pe tenour was this.

1 Alexander kyng of kynges and of lorde3, the so3n of godd* Amôn & pe qwene Olympias, to Talwyride quene of Amazon* 32 and pe oper ladys of pe same rewme: ioy. We late 30w weite pat thr3e parties of pe werlde, pat es to say, Asye, Affric, & Europe we hafe conquered*and made subiects vn-till vs, & pare was neuer none of par3 pat myste agarystnde our powere. 36 And if we now suld noste be of powere, to feghte with 30we it ware ane heghe schame tiff vs. Neuer-pe-lesse for als mekill

1 Thirteen lines blank space for a miniature.
Alexander moves his army against Porus through the desert. The Amazons assent to the terms of the letter.

Alexander marches against Porus through a desert. He summons them before him and advises them to give tribute.

He summoned them before him and advised them to give tribute.

The Amazons assent to the terms of the letter.

Alexander moves his army against Porus through the desert.

The desert is waterless and full of snakes and wild beasts, for the guides were favourable to Porus. Alexander then remembers the wise words of his council. They all go armed, so that the whole army gleams like the stars, with banners and a shining mail.

1 MS. cone.
2 Six lines with miniature I, covering with its foliage three-quarters of the margin.
3 wk turned into wy.
The unwholesome river.

A Macedonian knight finds water in a hollow and brings it to Alexander in his helmet. Alexander refuses it, lest he alone of all go refresh'd. He casts it down upon the rocks and goes without, so that all his followers are comforted as though they had drunken water. On the morrow they come to a river with reeds on its banks as high as pine trees. They drink of the water; it slew many of them with a flux. Alexander is greatly distressed, not only for his knights but also for the many beasts of burden that bear their things, and the flocks and herds that go with them.

So it fell that a knight of Macedoine pat lyfte Zephilus and water standyng in an holle stane, pat was gadir'd pare of pe dewe of pe heuen, the whilke pis forsaide knyghte putt in his Bacenet, & bro*the it til Alexander for to drynke. And Alexander saide un-till hym, 'I suppose,' quop he, 'pat I drynke pis water, saft pe Macedoynes & pe persyenes be any thyng refreschede pareby, or I saft hafe all pe refreschyng be my selfe.' And he ansered, & saide, 'Qou aff ane lorde,' quop he, 'aff he 8 comforted pareby.' Quop Alexander pa*n, 'And* if 3e saff all perishe trowes Qou pat it solde be lykand to mee, for to lyfe in sorowe & disese seyng pe dedd of pe Macedoynes & pe persyenes.' And be-lyne he garte helpe downe pe water on pe 12 ethe be-fore aff his men. And wheu his knyghtis saw that, they were hugely comforteth pare-by rjte als Ilka of pa*n hadd dronken a grete draughte of water, and pa*n went furthe pare wyne. And on pe morne, pa* come till a renera where 16 bankes was growand full of grete redys & pay ware als hye as pyne-trese; 3a, for pe maste partie of xt fote lange. Than badd[he] that pay drawe of pe water and brynge to pe Oste. Bot aff pat dranke pare-osse it keste pa*n in-till a flux, and slewe 20 a grete hepe of pa*m. For pat water was wonder scharpe, and als bittire als any mekiff gyre. Bot pa*n was Alexander gretly disessedd & aff his Oste no*te allanly of pa*m-selfe, bot also for pare horse3 & pare bestes pat pa*y ledd wit pa*n pe whilke bi-garn 24 for to faile for thyrste. Alexander hadd wit hym a thowsande Olyphante3 pat bare his golde, And fourre hundredth cartes of werre and jm & cc waynez. He hadd also in his Oste ccm horse me*n and muyles & camelles witowte*n nowmer, pat bare paire 28 vetails, and oper thyngez pat was necessarie to pe Oste; also oxen and kye, schep and swyne, wit-owte*n nowmer, pe whilke perischt for defaute of drynke. Sum* of Alexander knyghtes lykke'd Iren, Sum* dranke oyle, & sum ware at so grete meschefe 32 pat pay dranke pare awen stalynge. And thare was so grete habundance of nedders & oper venymous beste*3, pat pam by-houed nede*3 trauell armed, & pat was a grete nuy to pam & an heghe disese. Pa*n was Alexander wonder2 sorye & namely 36 for pe disese pat his Oste suffrede.

1 On first side of leaf 27 je sall is written, but on the second side je schal. 2 MS. undoubtedly reads worde, but one must substitute wonder.
The silent castle.

1 And as pay went endlande pis reuer, abowte pe viii houre of pe day, pay come till a castell pat stode in a litle Ile in pis forsaid ryner; And this castell was made of pe forsaid redc.

2 Pe brede of this ryuer was foure furlange leuith. And in pat castell pay sawe a few mei. And pay Alexander bud his mei spirre pay pat ware in pe castell in pe langage of Inde whare pay myghte fynde any swete watir able for to drynke. And also soi als pay spake to pay pay with-drew pay & hidd.

And Alexander gerte schotte arowes in-to pe castell and pay pay hidd pay wele pe mare. And when Alexander saw *that pay walde one na wyse speke wit hym, he hadd a certane of his

12 knyghtes nakne pay & swyme ouer pe water to pe castell. And pay xxxvi balde knyghtis & hardy of Macedoyne nakned pay, and tuke ilkan of pay a swerde in his hande & went in-to pe water & swane it to pay were passed in pe parte pare-off.

16 And sodeynly thare rase oute of pe water a grete multitude of bestes, pat ere called ypotaynes, grettere of body than an olyphant, and denoed thir knyghtis ever-ilkeame. And pay was Alexander riȝte sare greuced, and be-lyfe garte take pe forsaid guyde c1 & caste pay in-to pe water. And onane pay ypotaynes denoed pay.

And Alexander thoghte it was noȝte spefull langare to styffe wit these monstres, and garte trompppe vp and removed his

24 Oste fre peine, and went so all pat day wondere very for thriste. And also pay hadd grete disese & nuye of wilde. 2 Peste pat come apoȝ pay, pat es to say, of lyones, heres, vnycornes, tygres, and pardeȝ, wit pe whilike pay faughte & grete tranef hade.

28 And as pay went ouȝ pay wyse wit grete angere & diseese aboute pe elleneȝ houre pay saw a littil bate in pe riuer made of rede and mei rowande pare-in. And Alexander gert spirre pay in pe langage of Inde, where pay myȝte fynde any fresche

32 water. And pay talde ware & scheved pay a place a littil peine where-in pay saide pay scholde fynde a grete staunke of swete water and gude. And pay Alexander & hisys Oste went all aboute pat ryuer, & come till pis forsaid stanke and lugged 36 pay aboute it. And Alexander comanded pay pay sulde felle

In what fearful
wars his
knights try
to quench
their
thirst.
Going
along
the
banks they
come to a
little
isle
with a
castle,

*Leaf 28.*

wherein are
men who
will give
them no
answer.
Alexander
bids
in
his
knights
swim
the
stream.
They swim
the
river,
but are
debated
by
hippopo-
tani.
Alexander
throws the
guides into
the river
and they
are de-
voed also.
They travel
onwards
greatly
worried by
wild beasts.
At the
eleventh
hour they
meet a
small
boat
whose crew
direct them
to a great
pond of
fresh water.
They camp
round the

1 Four lines with miniature A and small a written in MS. margin beside.
2 of deleted by the scribe before Beste.
3 Four lines with red capital A and small a in the MS. margin beside.
The adventures with wondrous beasts.

pond. Alexander bids that they fell a great wood of huge reeds that grow around it.

When the moon rises a great crowd of scorpions come down to drink. And there come snakes also and many-hued dragons. These have crested heads with golden breasts and open mouths. Their breath slow any quick thing it smote upon and out of their eyes came fiery flames. Alexander comforts his frightened knights. Alexander shows how to fight them with nets, and slays many of them. How many men of Alexander fell thereby. The wonderful crabs that then attack them. Then come white lions.

a wodd' pat growed' faste pare-by three myle on lenth, & als mekil on brede. Pat wodde was all of pe redes; pat I spak of bi-fore, and pe stanke was a myle oul lenth. Pa that Alexander comanded' pat pay sulde make many fires in pe Oste, and gerte 4 trompe to pe mete. And alson pe mone be-gan to schyrmne pare come a grete multitude of scorpions to-warde pe stanke for to take pem a drynke. And pa pare come oper manere of nedders, and dragones wonder grete of dyuerse colours. And all pat cuntree resounded of pe noyse & pe hissing3 pare pat made. Pir dragones come dounne fra pe hye mountaynes for to drynke of pe stanke, and pay hadd' cresten one pare hedde3 & pare brest3 ware bryghte lyk golde, & paire 12 mowthes open. Paire aande slewe any qwikk thyng pe pat it smate apoîn, and oute of paire eghe pare come flammes of fyre. And when Alexander & his Oste saw pam pay ware riȝt *fered for pam. For pay wende pay schulde hafe weried pam ilkane. And pam Alexander comforted pare and saide vn-to pare: 'Mi wirchipful kyghtes,' quop he, 'bees noûte agaste of pam, but does ilkane as ze see me do.' And pam he tuk a nett & sett it bi-twixe hym & pam and tuke his schelde & his spere & fughte wit pam manfully. And when his kyghtes saw pat pay ware grety comforthed & be-lyfe tuke pare wapyne3 & didd' als pay sawe Alexander doo, and slewe of pam a grete multitude, what thurgh dyuerse wapyne3, what in pare fyres. And of Alexander kyghtes pe dragones slewe xxii & xxxi fotemeîn. After pam, pare come owte of pe forsaiade wodde of redes, Crabbes of a wonderfull greteness; and paire bakkes ware harder pam cocadrilleg. And when pe kyghtis smate pam one 28 pe bakkes wit paire speres, pay myȝte noȝte perche pam, ne na harme do pam. Neuer-pe-lesse pay slewe many of pam in paire Fires and pe remenant of pam gatt in-to pe stanke. And aboute pe sexte hour of pe nyghte pare come apoîn pam whytt 32 lyones grettere pam Bulles, and pay schoke paire heued3 at pam & grete manace made in paire manere. Pam pe kyghtes keped pam in paire nettis and slew pam. After this pare com apoîn pam pam a grete multitude of swyne pat ware all of a 36 wonderfull mekilness, wit tuskes of aubbett lenth. Wit pam pare come wilde meîn & women of pe whilke ilkane had' sex hende. Bot Alexander & his kyghtes keped pam in paire
nettis & slowe many of paun. And on pis wyse Alexander & his Oste was gretly diseed. Paun comande Alexander pat pay schuld make many fyres wit-owtthen pe Oste aboute pe stanke. 4 After this pare come apon paun a wondere grete beste, gretttere & strangere paun awh Olyphant, and he hadde in his frunte three lange hornes. And he was schape nyke a horse & he was alt blakke. And pis beste was called in pe langage of Inde 8 'Anddontrucion'. And or he went to pe water at drynke, he assailde pe Oste. Bot Alexander went here & pare amanget pe oste & comforthed paun. This ilke beste slowe of his knyghtes xxviiij and bare doune lij and at pe laste it felle in pe nettis and was slayne. After pis pare come oute of pe redes a grete multitude of myss als grete als foxes, and ete up pe dede bodys. Pare was na qwike thynge, pat pay bate pat ne also sōn it dyed. Bot harme did pay nane *to pe oste. Paun come pare flyande amanget paun bakkes, gretttere paun wilde dowfes, and paire tethe ware lyke meintethe. And pay didd men mekhit disese and hurte many meh. Of sum pay bate offe pe nese; of sum pe eres. In pe mornenyng arely pare come many fewlis als grete as wilturs, reed' of colour, and paireete & paire bekes alt blakke. Bot pay didd na disease to pe oste, bot went to pe stanke-syde & drewe fisches & ele3 oute of pe water, & ete paun. 12

1 Phain lefte Alexander pir perilous place3, and come wit his Oste, in-to pe cuntree of Bactrice, pe whilike was full of golde & oper reches. And pe meh of pe cuntree resayfed hym benyngly & wirefipully and gaffe hym and his Oste grete giftes. 16 And pare he habade xxth dayes. In pat cuntree pay sawe trees pat, in-stedde of leues, bare wolfe; pe whilike folke3 of pe cuntree gaderd' & made clathe pare-offe. Pe knyghtes of Alexander wex wonder balde & strange of hert because of 20 pe victoryes pe pay hadd woman3 of pe wilde bestes before nenned. 24

1 Fra ethyn, Alexander removed his Oste and come to pe place where Porus lay wit pe folke pat he had assembled. 28 And one pe morne bathe Alexander and Porus take paire grounde & arayed paire batelis for to feghte. And thain greater than bulls. Then follow huge swine with great tusks. And with them six-handed men and women. They make great fires around the pond. Then comes a horlikelike beast or an elephant. Alexander again * Leaf 29. rallies his men. It slays many, but is at last slain. Mice as big as foxes eat up the dead bodies. Whatsoever they bit at once died. Then come bats greater than wild doves. They march into Bactria where they are well received. The wool-bearing trees. The knights take courage because of the strange beasts they

1 Four lines with red ornate capital P, but small t scribbled in the margin beside. 2 Four lines space with red capital S and small s written in the margin beside.
The combat of Porus and Alexander.

Alexander lepped upon his horse Buktiphalas and went before his Oste & paid pay trumpede up & pe batellis joyned samein, & faghite to-gedir ristte sare. Bot pe Indiennes felt thikfalde in pe batell as corne dose in pe felde be-fore pe sythe. 2

1 And when Porus saw that, he went and stode bi-fore all his men, and cryed vn-till Alexander, & saide on this wyse:

'It sitte3 noste till an emperour,' quo3p he, 'to lose his me3n pus in vayne. Bot it sitte3 till hym for to determyne his 8 cause with his awen hande3. And parefore late thi folke stand still on pe ta syde, & myn on pe toper & late the & me feghte to gedir hand for hand. And if it happen pat pou ouer-come me, my folke & I sa3f be subiecte3 vn-to pe. And 12 if I ouer come the, than thou & thi folke be subiecte3 vn-to me.' Thir worde3 said Porus dispysande Alexander, bi-cause pat he was a maid of litle stature. For he was bot three cubites hye, & Porus was fyfe cubetes hye & mare. And pare-16 fore he traysted hym all in strenghe of his body, noste knawande pe & pe hardnes pat was hidd in Alexander.

*And than bathe pe ostes stode still ant lete pe twa kynge3 feghte samein, Porus gaft Alexander a grete str[a]ke to o3n pe hede, & was in poynte to hafe felled hym. And their Porus knyghtes sett vp a grete Schowte. And Porus turnede hym to payn-warde for to reprowe pa3f for paire schowttyng. And Alexander went till hym manfully & tuke his sword in 24 bathe his hande3 & lete flye at hym & hitt hym fullbott one pe heued & slew hym. And when pe Indiennes saw that pay bi-gan scharpely for to fighete wit Alexander & his oste. Vn-to whayme Alexander spake & sayde: 'Wrechis,' quo3p he, 28 'whatro feghte 3e se3t 3our kynge es dede. Wate 3e noste wele that thare na gouernour es pe folke are sparpled be-lyfe als schepe pat ere wit-owttew ane hirde.' Pe Indiennes ansered & saide: 'Vs es leuer,' quo3p pay, 'fghte manfully, and dye in the 32 felde, pa3f for to see pe dissolacion of oure folke, and oure lande be distroyed & wasted.' 'Leues 3our feghtynge,' quo3p Alexander, & wende3 hame to 3our hows3 pesably & seurely. For I swere 3ow bi oure godde3, if 3e will do so, 3e sa3f hafe no harme, ne 3e 3our lande sa3f noste be distroyed ne spoyle3, because pat 3e hafe fogniten so manfully for 3our kynge.' And when pe Indiennes

1 Robert Lounson is scribbled here in the right-hand margin.
Alexander and the Gymnosophists.

herde thir wordes pay keste fra paund paire wapynce & thanked Alexander and wirchiped him riste als he had bene a god. Than kyng Alexander lugged hym pære & his Oste wit hym, & he command to bery þe dede corse þat ware slayne in þe Battle, and offered sacrifis tift his godde. Also he garte Entere Porus þe kyng of Inde wirchipfully.

1 Fra thethyn Alexander removed his Oste & come tift a cuntree þat was called Oxidraces. The folkes of þat cuntree are wonder Symple mei, and nÖte prowde, & þay are called Gumnosophiste. Þay feghte neuer mare ne stryfes. Þay ga alway naked, & citez ne townnez hafe þay nane, Bot duellez in lugez & in çanes. When þe kyng of þis folke herd telt of þe commynge of Alexander he wrete a lettre, & sent vn-tiff hym whare-offe this was the tenour.

2* The corruptible Gumnosophist vn-tiff Alexander a man we 16 wryte. We here telt þat pou commes to werre apon in & whare of we merueylle vs gretyly. For wit vs saff þou fynd nathiyng þat pou may spoyle vs offe. For we hafe na thyng elles amanges vs, bot allanly whare with we may sustene our wafull bodys. What may þou paund take fra vs. Bot if þou come for to feght wit vs, feghte oû. For I late the wele wit, þat our symplenes wiff we on na wyse lefe.' When Alexander had reed this lettre he sent ane answere agayne oû this wyse. 'Paisably,' quop he, 'wit we com to sow and no violence do sow.' And þaund he wente in-to þe cuntree whare þay duelled. And he saw þaund ga naked & duelle in luges & in canes, & þaire wyfes & þaire childe oû fra þaund, walkand wit wilde bestez.

24 And he had grete merueylle, & asked þaund if þay had any oþer howse. And þay ansuerde & said, 'Nay. Bot in þir holettez duceled we alwaye & in þir çanes.' And Alexander commandid gretyly paire symplenesse, and bad þaund aske hym 32 whate-so þay walde. And þay ansuered & sayde, 'Gyffe vs,' quop þay, 'vndedlennesse, so þat we mow nÔte dye; for oþer reches couet we nane.' Quop Alexander, 'I am dedely my selfe, how þaund may I gyffe you vndedlleness?' And when þay 36 herd hym say soo þaund þay ansuered & sayde oû this wyse. 'Λ, Λ, wrecched man,' quop þay, 'whare to wendez þou þus

ship Alexander as a god. King Alexander offers sacrifice and buries Porus worshipfully. King Alexander comes to the Gymnosophists, a strange people.

* Leaf 39. The letter of their king to Alexander, telling him he has naught to win of them.

Alexander commends them and comes peaceably to them. He sees them leading the life of nature.

He admires their ways greatly and offers them a boon. They ask for deathlessness. They chide him for his ambition when they

1 Five lines with red capital F and small f written in the margin beside.  2 Four lines with red capital T.
The pillars of Hercules and the uttermost islands.

They are silvery, and there were of them.

Three lines with red capital A and small a in the margin beside.

1. Three lines with red capital A and small a in the margin beside.

2. Bottom of leaf 30 right-hand side reads as above gert perche; top of leaf 30 turning over to the left-hand side reads garte perche.

3. Four lines with red capital F and small f written in the margin beside.

4. MS. of twice.
Adventures with wild beasts and wondrous folk.

als slaw als a snyle. And, in his oute-come, he slew twa knyghtis of Alexander. This ilk beste myste pay on na wyse perche wit paire speres. Bot wit mellis of yren pay slew it.

And fra peine pay trauelde thrithy day iournej and come to pe vittemaste ile of Inde, & paire pay lugged paund beside a ryuere pay es callede in pat langage of Inde Hemmahurer. And aboute pe Eleuend' houre pay come owte of pe wodde a gretete multitude of Olyphanties, & come apoi paund wit a gret birre & paire groynes oppi. And onane Alexander lepe apoi his horse Buktiphalas and busked hym agaynes paund & hadd pe Mecedorynes pay pay solde tak paiare horse and ilk a ma nef a swyne in a bande, & wende agaynes pe olyphantis. And when pe olyphantes saw paund, pay come gapande wit paiare groynez redy te tak paund. And when pe Mecedonnes saw pat pay ware fered & durste noyte go to paund. And Alexander saide vn-to paund, My wirchipfuit knyghtes, quop he, 'bese of gud comforthe and drede3 now na-thynge. For, & se wit gare youre swyne crye faste *3e schall see all pir Olyphantes flee anoi.' And alsone als pe Olyphanties herde pe crye of pe swyne, & pe noyse of paiare trompes, pay fledd & durste noyte habyde. And Alexander & his men pursued thaim, & what wit nettis, whatt wit swerdes & speres, pay slewe of paund a gretete multitude, and come agayne to thaire tentis.

*1* Line altered into Inde.

*2* Line with red capital A and small a beside it in margin.

*3* Four lines with red capital A in red, and small a beside.
Strange beasts and fearful storms.

...and women.

They go thence fifteen days till they meet the Cynoccephali whom they overcome.

They March forty days to a barren land with no hills, and a terrible east wind blows over it and causes fires and disease throughout the camp. They fear it is because of the Equinox. Then they go thence twenty-five days to a green valley where is fearful cold. They light fires against the snowstorms. Rain comes and the snow stops, but five

als rughe of hare as pay hade bene bestes. Whase kynde & custom it was als wele to be in pe water, als oþ pe lande. And als some als pay saw Alexander Oste onane pay fledd to pe water, and dowked in-till it. Fra þeine þay traveled xv day iournée, 4 and entred in-till woddes þat ware full of cynoccephali, þe whilk ke als soþ als þay saw Alexander & his oste onane þay assailede þam. Bot Alexander & his meþ, what wit arowes whate wit speres & nettes slew a grete multitude of þam, and 8 þe remenawnt of þam fledde þere and thare in þe wodde3.

1 Fra thethyn þay went fourty dayes & came in-till a cham-paynue cuntree, þat was aft Parayn, and na hye place ne na hilles myghte be sene on na syde. And as it ware aboute þe xij 12 houres of þe day, pare bigan so grete a wynde to blawe oute of þe Este þat it blew doune to þe eithe the aſt thaire tentis & þaire luges. And þare was grete disese ymeng þe oste. For þe wynde tuk fire-brandes oute of fyres þat þay hadd made, and 16 smate dyuerse meþ & bynte þam. And þam Alexander knyghtes moynaerde gretyly & said amanget þam, 'þe werthe & þe wrike ofoure goddes;' quod þay, 'faileþ apoþ vs, Bicause we seke to ferre towarda þe soþ ry synge.' 'My wirchipulſ 20 knyghtes,' quod Alexander, 'bese * of gud comforthe and no thyng ferde for þis tempeste es noþte falleþ thurgh wretche ofoure goddes bot be-cause of equinox of heruest.' When þe wynde was cessed þay gadirdede to-gedir þat þe wynd hadd 24 sparpled;

2 Fra þeine þay went xxv dayes and come in-till a grene valay, and þare þay lugged þam. Than commanded Alexander þat þay schuld make many fyres. For it began for to be vn- 28 sufferable calde. And thare be-gan for to falle grete flawghtis of snawe, as þay had bene grete lokkes of wolte. Whan Alexander saw that, he was ferde þat it schuld noþte hafe cessed sone, and bad his meþ þat þay suld tred domd þe snawe & full 32 it wit þaire fete. And þaire fyres also helpe þam gretyly. Neuer- þe-lesse þare ware fuye hundrethe of þe Oste dedd thurgh þat snawe, þe whilk Alexander gart bery. þam þare felle a pass-and grete rayne, and þe snaw cessed. Wit þe rayne, also, þare 36 come so thikke a myste, þat contenually three days to gedir þay

1 Four lines with red capital F and small y in margin beside.
2 Four lines with red capital F and small y in the margin beside.
saw na souë. And oute of þe clude þat hange abowyn þam þer fell as it hadȝ bene grete fyrebrançæ þe whilk brynt many of thaiæ tenttis and of þaire luges. And onane Alexander offered 4 sacrifici till his goddeg and bad his knyghtis put alde ryeûn clotheg wate bi-fore þe fire, and he made his pryare. And also sowð the whédir wexe clere & faire.

1 Fra thethin, þay remowëd and come till a grete ryeûre þat es called Ganges & þare þay luged þam. And as þay lukeð ouer on the toþer syde, þay saw twa or þre meûd walke up & downgh þare. And Alexander badd his meûd spirre þam in þe langage of Inde what þey ware. And þay answereð & said;

8  "We are Bragmayns," quop þay. Alexander hadȝ grete desyre to speke wit þe Bragmayns. Bot he myȝte noȝte wynû ouer þe water; it was so depe & so brade Bot if it had bene in þe monethe of July and Auguste. And also it was full of ypotaynes & scorpions and cocadriiles, out taken in þe foraûil monethes. And when he saw þat he myȝhte on na wyse wynû ouer he was reȝte heuy. And belyfe þe garte make a lyttlþ bate of redis, & counerde it wît nowtte hydis & gerte pykke it wele bathe wit-in & wit-owtten. And when þe bate was made, he gert a knyght of his gang in-to it, and gaffe hym a lettre wit hym for to bere * to Dindimus, þat was kyng of þe Bragmayns, of whilk lettre þis was þe tenouer.

12 "Kynge of kynges and lorde of lordeȝ. Alexander þe soûl of godd Amoû & of þe quene Olympias, vn-to Dindimus kyng of Bragmayns, iøy. Euer seû we were come to þat age þat we couthe discerne by-twix gud & ilt we hade desyreð soueraynly for to hafe wysdomme & konnyng, & for to putt away fra vs ignorance & vnconnynge. For as þe wise techynge of our philosophres declares opynly, Eloquence wit owtten wit & wisdon doûe ofte-sythes mare skathe þam gude. Pæreore we hade wele vnderstanden by relacion of dyuerse meûn, þat ȝour lyfe & ȝour maners are diuised and diuerse fra all oper meûn; so þat noþer oûn þe See ne on þe lande se seke na helpe and þat þe ȝeme anþer manere of doctryne þam we hafe herende ofoure ȝour maner of doctryne. Whare-fore we pray ȝow þat ȝe wil certyfye vs bi ȝour lettres of ȝour lyffe and ȝour maners and ȝour doctryne. For hundred have dies. Then comes a great mist with the rain, out of which fall fire. Alexander offers sacrificio to his gods and the weather becomes clear. They come to the Ganges, on the other side of which are the Brahmanes. They cannot cross because of the dangerous beasts. He sends a knight over in a boat with a

1 4 Four lines with capital ʃ and small ʃ written in the margin beside.
2 4 Four lines with capital ʃ in red, and small ʃ in the margin beside.
Since by giving another man goodness one loses no goodness oneself. He makes a comparison.

Dindimus' letter to Alexander.

Wisdom may be bought with no price.

* Leaf 32 bk.

He commends wisdom in Alexander as an Emperor.

Their ways are other than those of the Greeks. The Greeks shall have no profit because of their war-likeness. The Brahmans lead a simple life and eschew the worship of many gods. They do not till nor fish. They trust perauneture we may take pære of sunt gud Ensample, and you gudness neuer be pë leesse. For it es na harme till a man thurgh his gudnes to make anoþer man gude as he es. The whilk I may prove hi this simyllitez—I suppose a man had 4 in his hant a lyght candill, many oþer candills may be lygheted pære at, & it lose na-thynge of his lyghte. And rìste so it es of þe gudnesse of a man. For many men may take gude ensample of hym & his gudnesse be na thynge enmenuste pæreby. Where-8 fore 3itt eft-sons we pray 30w pät wit-owttëw any taryng or delay, 3e schowe vs pät maners of 30ur lyffyng. Than kyng Dindimus resaffed þis lettre wirchipfully and wrate anoþer agayne of this tenour.

1 Dyndimus maister of þe Bragmayns vn-to kyng Alexander ioy & gretynge. We hafe wele wundirstandëd by þe tenour of thi letters, þat þou desyres gretly for to hafe verray connynge and perfitt wysdome; þe whilke are mëkët better þan any 16 kyngdom; for þay may neuer be boghte wit na pryece, wharefore I comend þe gretly, knawyng þat þou arte a wyse man. For ane Empour wiowttëw * wisdom, es noghte lorde of his subiectis, Bot his sugettis ere lordeis of hym. 3e wrate 20 vntill vs, praying vs for to schewe 3oweoure maners of lyffyng, ilke a poynte efter oþer, þe whilke we halde impossible for to doo. For oure maner of lyffyng es füht ferre dyuertës fra 3ours. For noþer we wirchiphe þe goddes þat 3e wirchiphe, 24 ne ledis þe lyfe þat 3e lede. And if I wratte 3owe oughte of oure maner of lyffyng, 3e may hafe na sanoure pære in, be-cause 3e are besily ocupied wit dedis of armes. Neuer-pëlesse þat 3e say nogte þat I layne oure lyfe fra 30w for envy, Als 28 mëkët as comeʒ to my mynde at þis tyme I saʃt writt vsnto 30w of oure maners.

2 4 We Bragmayns ledeʒ a symple lyfe & a clenew & þe wirchippyng of many goddes we eschu. We do na synnes ne 32 we wiıt hafe na mare þan resow of kynde asches. Aft thyngeʒ we suffer þat, say we, es necesary & yngoghe, þat es nogte ouermekët. We title na lande, ne erys, ne sawes, ne 3okes noþer ox ne horse in plughe ne in carte. Ne nett caste we nane in þe 36 see, for to take fysche; Ne hunntyne ne fewlynyge vse we

1 Four lines with capital D in red, and small d in margin beside.  
2 Three lines with red capital W, and small w in margin.
Dindimus' letter to Alexander.

79

nanne. Mete & drynyke hase we yngoge, and oper mete seke we nane, bot pat pe erthe oure allere moder wit-owtteh mannes labour brynges furthe. Wit swilke metis we suff oure wambes, 4 whilke nuge vs noste, ne na harme dose. And 3it of swilke metis we suff noste oure bodis to full. For amange3 vs it es an vn-semely thyngye & an vn-lecfullf to see a grete-belyed man. And pare-for er we aff oure lyfe tym wit-owtteh sekenesse 8 & lyffes lang & alwaye are in gude hele till oure lyffes ende. We vse neuer-mare na medecyns ne sekse na helpe for pe hele of oure bodys. At a terme of deede endes oure lyfes, for ane of vs leues na langere pat an-opor, Bot efter pe order of pe birth of 12 mañ, pe terme of deede comes till ilke a mañ. Thare come3 nane of vs at na fire for na calde, ne clathe3 come3 pare nane apow vs, Bot alway we ga naked. We fullff neuer pe desyres of oure bodys. Thurghe pacyene we suffre all thynges3. All 16 oure inwarde enemies we slaa, So pat we drede nane enemies wit-owtteh. For lightlyer es a citee or a castele taken pat es ensegged bathe wit inwarde enemies & wit-owtteh, pat pat es ensegged allanly wit owtwarde enemies. Bot pou, emperou, 20 feghtes agaynes owtwarde3 enemies for [to] foster & nuresche thyh inwarde3 enemies, pe whilke ere fendes of helfe. We Bragmayns has slayne all oure inwarde3 enemies and parefore we drede nane owtwarde enemies ne nane helpe sekse for to hase agaynez paw* 24 noper be see ne be land3. Bot we ere always seure yngoge, and lyffes wit-owtteh any drede. Oure bodys we hift wit pe leues of trees and pe fruyte of pat we eete. We eete mylke also and drynkes water of a gude ryuere or of swete welles. 28 We wirchippe a god, and till hym alwaye we stede lonynges. We desire pe life of pe werlde pat es to come, and vs liste noste here pe ping pat turnes to na profett. We spekke noste mekilt, Bot when we ere artede for to speke we say noste bot 32 pe sothe, and onane we halde vs still. Reches luffe we noste. Couetise es a thynges pat may noste es filled, pe whilke ofte- syth3 brynges a man till a mescheuous ende. Wretre ne envie es pare nane amange3 vs, ne nane of vs es strangere pañ 36 anoper. Of the pouert pat we hase we ere riche, for we hase it in comon. We strife neuer mare, ne beres neuer wapeñ. We bere pesses ilkañ till oper of custome, noste thurgh vertu. Domes hase we nane amanges vs, for we do nane ill, whare-fore to mother earth. They use such meats as do them no harm, nor do they eat too much, and there are no great-bellied men amongst them. They have no sickness nor medicines. They live the fixed term of life. They have no fire for cold. They conquer themselves. Alexander conquers others and is queried by his inner enemies. Therefore do the Brahmins 3 Leaf 33. drink foes. They are clad in leaves and drink water. They worship one god and desire eternal life. They love not long speech nor covetousness. They are all of equal might and riches, and bear no weapons. Neither have they dooms, for they do no ill.
Neither need they mercy. They have no avarice, adultery, or lechery, and have therefore no penance or sudden death. They are arrayed in no bright clothes.

They always keep to the same trades. They use no baths. They will make no other man serve them. They have no houses nor vessels, but live in caves and crags. They sleep on the earth.

* Leaf 33 bk.

Their houses become their graves. They sail not the seas for trade. They seek no eloquence but rather simplicity of speech. They have no philosophers, for such are liars and of unsteadyfast speech. But in their schools they learn wisdom and righteousness. They love not plays.

we schulde be called vn-to dome. A law pare es pat es contrary til oure kynde. For we do na mercy, bi-causwe do no thynge whare-fore we sulde aske mercy. We do na labour pat pertene to couetise or avarice. We giffe noyte oure bodysse to lecherye. We do nane advowtrye, ne we do na synnh whare-fore vs sulde nede to do penance. We fynde na fawte in na thyngen, For we aff does that pat righte es. We dye na sodeyne dede, For thurgh foule dedis we coruppe noyte pe ayere. We vse na clothes pat are litte of dynerse colours. Oure wiffes ne are noyte gayly arrayd for to plesse vs. Ne wit pamm we comon noyte bi-cause of luste of lecherye, but bi-cause of childre getynge. Our wyffes sekes na noper clothynges, pann pe forluke of godh hase granted pamm. And whaa dare take apoyn hym for to chauge his wirkynges, an heghe synvs vs thynke it ware tiff any man for to presume to do it. Baththis vse we nane, ne warme water to wasche oure bodys wit aff. Pe Sow mynstres vs hete, and pe dewe of pe ayer ministres vs moyster & wete. We hafe na thoghte of na thyngen, ne we schewe na lordechippe abownh oper menh pat ere lyke vn-tiff us. For a grete crueltee we halde it to constreyne a maud to serue vs, whayme kynde & pe forluke of godh hase made oure brofer als fre als we are. We brynne na stanes for to make lyme off and pare-wit to make vs howses at duefte in, and curious palasse: ne vessef make we nane. In caues or creuycee of cragges we duelle, whare thare comez na noyse of wyndes  * ne whare vs thare dredre na rayne. On pe erthe we slepe wit-owtten any besynesse. Swilk howses we hafe; in pe whilke, whils we lyffe, we duefte, and when we dye, pay ere oure granes. We sayle noyte in pe see aboute na merchandyse, in pe whilke pay suffre many peritis pat sayles parein & many mercurylles caff tiff offe. The crafte of Eloquence & faire speche, lere we noyte for to polishe oure wordes; Bot thurgh pe sympilnesse pat we hafe pat suffres vs noyte to lye, aff oure speche we speke. Scoles of philosophers haunt wee noyte, whase teechchyngez es alway discordand & na thyngen certayne, ne stabiliiff diffines, bot for pe mare partye lyces. Bot pa scoles we haunte in pe whilke we lere to lyffe vertuosly and also thynges pat teches vs for to do no wrange to no man. Bot after verray right-wisnesse to helpe ilk man at oure powere. Plays lufe we nane.
Bot if vs liste hafe any disporte we take & rede3 pe lyfes & pe dedis of oure Auncestres, and oure predcessours. And if we fynde any thyngne in þam pat es cause of laughtre 4 þar-at we wepe & makes dole. Neuer-þe-lesse we behalde oþer thynges of pe whilk oure hertis ere gladdide and grete lykyng has, pat es at say, heuen-schynne wit sternes wit-owt nowmer; þe sôñ faire & bryghte, of whose bryghtenesse alþ 8 þe werldes takes lyghte and hete. The see we se alwaye of purpur colour, and when temperesz ryseþ þere-in it dis-truyes noȝte þe lande þat es nere it, as it does in þoure partes. Bot he embrace3 it as his sister and gase aboute it. 12 And in þe se we see many dyverse kynde3 of Fisches, Delphines & porpaseþ layke þam. We hafe lykyng also for to bihalde faire feldes aloner ﬂowshed ﬂores of þe whilke a swete relaifer enters in-till oure nose5, in þe whilke 16 a sensible saule hase maste delite. Also we delit vs in faire place3 of wodde3 & of swete welles whare we hore swete sange3 of fewles. This customs hafe we al-way, þe whilke, & þou waldal halde noȝte bot a while, we trowe þou suld thynke 20 þam rｉgte hard. Blame noȝte me, for alt þat þou requerede me be þi lettres I send þe wretyn. Neuer-þe-less, and it sulde noȝt displeshe the, I walde tell þe a littill of oure doctryne þe whilke makes oure lyfe to some harde vn-to þe. 24 þee hafe wit-in a schorte while conquered3 & made sugete vn-to your empire alt Asy, Europe, & Affryke. As your selve hase1 sayde * þe make þe lighte of þe sôñ to faile, when þe seke þe termes of his course thurgh werre. þe et al manere 28 of thynges2 þat com3 tiff hande, And your vesages seme3 as þe ware fastande & hungry. þe slaþ your childre makande sacrafice of þam to Mawmetes. þe sawe discorde bi-twix kynges and þese þat schulde be meke þe stirre for to be prowde. þe make meid to thynke þat grete space of laudes sufiçe3 þam noȝte And so þay seke duellyngye place3 of heuen. 32 Also thurgh your goddes þe do many ift dedis, as þay did þam selve, Ensample of Iubiter your godd3 & of Proserpyna þat 36 þe wirchipe as a goddesse. For Iubiter defouled many mens

1 Scribblings at the bottom of leaf 33 bk.:—‘P.’ ‘G.’ below the P., then ‘H.’ Amen. Do For’.

2 Scribe originally wrote thynkes, but changed the k into a g, thus thynges.
wyfes, and Proserpyna made many men to do advowtry wit hir. Full wreched & full hye fules pay ere, pat swilke goddes wirchipes. 3e will notte suffer men lyfe in pai re awenD libertee bot makes pay your thralles & your sugetes. 3e deme 4 notte rightwisly, 3e gerre your iuge3 change your lawes as sow liste. 3e say many thynges pat sulde be done, bot 3e do pay notte. 3e halde na mañ wyse boñ hym pat hase Eloquence of speche. 3e hase all your witt in your tunge3, and all your 8 wysdome es in your mouthe. 3e lufe golde & siluer & gaders pam to-gedir and desyre3 to hafe grete howse3 & hye, and grete maltitude of seruande3. 3e ete & drynk to mekmi, so pat ofymes your stomake thurgh grete repliecion es greued & many 12 sekenesse pare-thurgh 3e falt in, & so ofte sythese before your tyme. 3e wolde ever-mare halde your reches and all thynges pat 3e may gete. Bot all thynges at pe laste leues 30w. Pe wysdom allanly of pe Bragmayns passe3 all your witt & 16 your wysdom. For, & we wele consedere, pe same moder pat broghte forthe stanes & trees, of pe same was bathe oure bygynynge & yours. 3e honowre your Sepultours curiously wit golde & syluer, and in vesellie made of precyouse stanes 3e putt 20 pe asse of your bodys, when pay ere brynned. And what may be werre pay for till take pe banes, pat pe erthe sulde hase, for to ga bryjn pay, and notte suffere pe erthe resayfe his element pe whille he broghte forthe.

'We sla na beste3 in pe wircipline of goddes. Nee temples make we nane, for to sett in ymage3 of golde or of siluren in pe name of false goddes, as 3e do; ne awters of golde and of precious stanes. 3e hafe swilkwe a lawe for to honoure your 28 goddes writ 3our gudes for pat pay saft here 3our prayers. We vndirstande & wate wele pat noper for golde ne siluer; ne for pe blode of calunes nor gayte ne schepe Godd heres any mañ. Bot for gude werkes pe whilke Godd lufes, and thurgh 32 pe wordes of denote prayere. Godd witt here a mañ for pe worde. For thurgh worde we ere lyke to Godd. For Godd es worde,* and pat worde made all pe werlde and thurgh pat worde all thynges hase beyng, Mouyng & lyfe. That worde wircipline 36 wee and lufes & honowres. Godd es a spirite. And he lufes na-thyng bot pat that es clene. Whare-fore we halde 30w full grete foles, that wene 3our kynde be heuene, and pat 3e hase
communicacio with Godd; And never-pe-less files your kynde
wit advowtries & fornicacions & servyce of Mawmettis & false
goddis, and many oper wikkede dedis: ilke a day pis 3e do.
4 pis 3e luffe, and parefore when 3e ere dede ye salt suffiere tour-
mentis wit-owtten nowmer. 3e wene pat Godd will be mercyable
vn-to 30w bi-cause pat 3e offre hym blode & flesse of dyuerse
besest. Bot we ou pe contrarve wyse luffe3 clennesse bathe of
8 Body & of saule, so pat we mowere hafe after pis lyfe ioy pat
never salt hafe ende.

'3ee serue noste a Godd' pat regne3 in heuen, Bot 3e do servyce
to many false goddis. For als so many membris, als 3e hafe on
12 your bodys, als many goddis 3e wirchipe & serunes. For 3e caffe
a maïd pe lesse werle, and rîte as a maïd here have many
lymmes, so 3e say pare are many goddes in heuen. 3e say Iuno
es godd of pe hert, bi-cause he was wonder angry; and Mars 3e
16 say es godd of pe breste, bi-cause he was prynce of Batelis.
Mercury 3e caffe godd of pe tung, bi-cause he was wonder
eulouquent in spekyng. Hercules 3e trowe be godd of pe armes,
Bi-cause he did twelwe passande dedes of armes. 3ee trowe
20 Bacns be godd of pe throthe, for he fande firste drounkynnesse.
Couetise, 3e say, es godd of pe lyuer, for he was pe firste lechoure
pat euuer was. And 3e say pat he hase in his hande a byrnand
fyrebrande whare-wit he styrres pe luste of lechery. Cereris
24 3e caffe godd of pe wambe, bi-cause scho was pe firste Fynder
of wheete. And Venus, be-cause scho was moder of lechery, 3e
say scho es godd of pe preuee membes of maïd & woman.
Mynerua, bi-cause scho was fynder of many werkes, 3e say
28 wisdome riste3 in her, and parefore 3e caft hir godd of pe heuen:
And on pis wyse ait pe body of maïd 3e deuyde in goddes,
& na party pareoffe 3e lefe in your awen powere. Ne 3e trowe
noste that a Godd pat es in heuen made your bodys of noghte.
32 False goddes 3e wirchipe pat salt brynge 3ow to thralledome
& schame & schenchipe, and to thayn 3e make sacrifise &
tribute payes. Vn-to Mars 3e offre a Bare. To Bacns 3e
offere a gayte; To Iune a pacoke; To Iubiter a Bulle; To
36 Appollo * a swane1; To Venus a doufe; To Mynerua ane
owle; To Cereris floure; To Mercury hony. And Hercules 3e
onowren3 wit floure & grene brauncies of treesse3. Pe temple

Their own
kind with
foul sins
and
idolatry.
When they
die they
shall suffer
endless
pain and
their slain
beasts avail
them
nought.
The Greeks
serve not
one God
but many.
They have
for every
human
member
a god.
The ac-
count of all
the Greek
gods and
their evil
doings.

Thus they
give all
their body
over to
numberless
gods, not
worship-
ping the
Creator,
but rather
false gods
that bring
them into

* Leaf 35.
thraldom.
The sacri-
fices

1 Bottom of leaf 34 swanne, top of leaf 35 swanne.
of Couetyse 3e enourne wit rose. Aflf 3our myghte & 3oure triste 3e putt in pam pat may 30w na-thyng helpe at nede. Now sothely 3e pray pam noste to be 3our helpers, Bot 3oure tourmentours. For it byhoues nedis be pat, als many 4 goddes als 3e wirchipe & gyffe3 paim powere of 3our lymmes, als many tourmente3 3e suffiere. Ane of 3our goddes stirres 30w to fornyacacion. Ane ooper to ete & dryinke to mekill, and anoper to sfighte & stryffe. Aff ere pay 3our lordes, and to s paim 3e obey & servues and wirchippes. So pat wonder it es pat 3our wreichid bodys fayles noste for pe many wikkede dedis pat 3e do to so many goddes. And gud riȝte it es pat 3e serue swilke goddes bi-cause of pe many wikkede dedis pat 3e do. 12

And for 3e will noste cesse of 3our iff dedis, parefore 3e serue goddes tiff 3our awend harme, For euermare pay desyre pat 3e do iff. If 3our goddes here 30w when 3e pray to pam, pay do 30w harme in 3our conscience. For pat that 3e pray 16 fore es iff. And if pay here 30w noghte, pay er e pay contrarye to 3our desyres. Whare-fore whethir pay here 30w, or pay here 30w noghte, euermare pay do 30w disesse. {eire er pa

tourmente3 pat oure doctours talde vs offe, pat here in this 20 werilde tourmente3 30w as 3e ware dede. For, and 3e consyder wele, pare may no man suffiere wers tourment paim 3e doo. For att pe takens pat oure doctours telle3 vs ere in helle, and we see paim in 3owe. 2 pare are many paynes in helle, 24 3e suffire paynes when 3e wake for to do advowntes, fornyacations, & thistes, ma[n]-slawghteres. And namely, pat 3e bee filled of worldly reches; 3a, & of worldly rechesse. For oure doctours says, pare es in helle so mekilt thriste, pat it may 28 neuer be slokend; and 3e haue so grete Couetyse of worldly reches pat 3e may neuer be fuf. Pay say also pat in helle pare es a hunde pat es called Cerberus pe whilke hase thre heuedes; And if 3e censered ryȝte, 3our wambes are lyke Cerberus. 32

For mekilt etyiȝg & drynkkynge, pay say also, pare es in helle a maner of nedder pat es called Idra. And 3e for pe many vice3, pat 3e hafe because of 3our suft wambe3 may be calleda Idra. Whare-fore & we bi-helde wele att pe illes pat 36

1 MS. reads pa.
2 in jowe inserted in the right-hand margin by the same scribe.
3 MS. twice over, pare es.
are in helte, pay duefle in 30w. * Waa es 30w, wreches, pat wilke a mysbileue haldes; whare-fore after pis lyfe, 3e moa suffere paynes wit-owtwe noumner.' When Alexander hadd redd pis lettre, he was wonder wrath, he-caus of injury of his goddes. Never-pe-less, be-lyfe he gart write anoper agayne of this tenour.

1 Kyng of kynges, and lord of lordes, Alexander pe son of 8 goddes Amon and of pe quene Olympias, to Dindimus, kyng of pe Bragmayng, gretyng. If all be fun& be-lyf amanges 30w pat pou hase sent wretyn in thy lettres, pat allanly 3e are gude men in pis werlde; for as pou says 3e do naad ill.

12 Bot wit pou wele for certayne, pat pis maner of lyffyng commes noste of vertu bot of custome. All thyngez pat we do, 3e sayes es synn. And all pe crafte, pat ere amanges vs on pe same wyse, 3e say, pay ere synnes. 3e will distroye all pe customs pat man-kynde hedir-towarde hase hadd & vsed. Owther 3e schew bi 3our worde, pat 3e are goddes, or ellis till goddes 3e hase envy. And pare-fore 3e say, as 3e say, I may nost write to 30w aft pe order of 3our lyffyng. Bot als mekill pare-off.

16 als I may vnderstande at this tyme, I saft writte un-to 30w. 3ee say 3e vse noste for to fitt pe erthe, ne sawe na corne, ne plante na ynes, ne sett na trees, na to make na faire howse, And pe cause here-of as it wele semes es for 3e hase na Ireh, whare-of 3e myghte make 30w tyles for to wirke with-all. And pare-fore 30w by-houses nedes et herbes & lede an harde lyfe, ryte as beste. For 3e may now ber gette brede ne flesche ne fyshe. Does nost wolles oîn be same wyse, pe whilke, whieth pe pay may noste gete paiire fitt of flesche, pay fitt paiire belys of pe erthe? And it ware leful & lykke to 30w to come till oure cunteere, we sulde lere na wisdom of 30ure nede. And pare-fore late 3our hunger habyde at hame in 3our avenu cunteere.

21 Pat man es noste mekills at commend, pat alwayes lyfles in disesse. Bot he es gretly to commend; pat in reches lyfles attempetally. Bot and men schulde be commendid pat are oppressed wit disesse, pat sulde blynd men, leprouse men.

24 3e pate swilke oner anoper at commendid; pe blynde, for he sees nost at desyre; pe pouer, for he hase noste at do. And we wald make oure duellynge in 3our cunteere we sulde suffere.

* Leaf 35 blank.

Alexander is angry at this letter, and replies to Dindimus.

...
Alexander on the foolishness of Brahmin austerity.

do no ill, since their defect

* Leaf 36.

hinders them.
Their chastity is due to want of food.

But the Brahmins live as mere beasts.

The Brahmins seek no learning, having beastlike no feeling or delight in good. But men can rejoice through free will.
The changes of the world and of the ages of man are even as the day brightens and darkens, even as a child is simple, youth presumptuous, and old age stable.

Who will look for the opposite? The delights of the senses and of those things given us by earth, sea, and sky.

Abstinence from this is pouert & wretchednes ripte as 3e do. 3e say also pate 3our wyfes vse 3 na prowde array for to plese paire husbande, and pe cause es for pay hafe na nopere * thynge for tiff arraye payd wit. Also 3e say 3e do name advowtries ne fornycacions. And pat es na 4 meruaile! For-why, how sulde pay hafe luste to lechery pat etes no3te. Luste of lechery es no3te comonly, bot yf it come of hete of pe leuer or ells of habundance of mete & dryynke. Bot 3e ete na-thynge bot herbes & rote3, as 3e ware swyne, 8 & dryynkes water & vnnethes may 3e sloken 3our hunger and parefore 3e hafe nau appitite to women.

'3e hafe na liste to studie aboute lerynge, ne 3e seke na mercy ne dees nane tiff oper. And aht this 3e hafe in comon wit best3. For ripte as best3 hase nowper reso3 adiscree3, ne hase na felynge of gude, ripte so pay hafe na delite in gode. Bot tiff vs reasoble men pat has free wit of kynde ere many lykynge & blandeschynge granted. For it es im-possible pat 16 pis werlde wyde & brade sulde no3te hafe sum chaungynge of governance; So pat ne after heynness & sorowe, Ioy & myrthe sulde no3te folowe. For-why manes wilt es variable & chaungeable pat chaungynge wit pe heuen aboww. On pe same wyse 20 manes hert es dyuerse. For when pe day es clere, manes hert es gladde & blythe. And when pe day es derke, manes wittis are derke & dulle & heuy. Also men chaungynge thurgh dyuerse ages. For barnehed reioysse it in symplinnes, southeide in 24 presumptuousnes, And grete elde in stabilnes. For wha will luke efter wysdome in a childe, In a 3unge man stabilnes, or in an alde man wildenes? Many delitable thynge comes tiff oure mynde. For sum we See wit oure eghne; Sum we hafe 28 thurgh herynge; Sum we fele thurgh smellyng; Sum thurgh tastyng; and Sum thurgh towchynge. Sumtyme we hafe delite in salutacions & sweete sange3 & melodys of dyuerse Instrumente3. Of pe erthe we hafe al maner of gud fruyte3; 32 of pe see we hafe habundance of fysche, and of pe ayere delyte of fewles of dyuerse kyndis. If pou abstene pe fra alt thies outwirr it es for pride or for envy. For pride, pat pou dispyse3 swilke precyouse gifte3. For envy bi-cause pay ere no3te gyffen 36 30w, as pat pay ere to vs. Bot efter myn opynyon I deme pat

1 Leaf 35 pam wit; leaf 36 pam wit.
2 The second vowel in folowe is difficult to read. It looks like folowe.
Dindimus to Alexander. Of the goodly ways of the Brahmins. 87

3our lyflyling and 3our maners commes mare of soundnesse paid of wysdom. For seid 3e are meiin 3e schulde hafe pe vertu3 of a resonable creature, and pat hafe 3e nochte. 1 When Dindimus had red 3is lettre, ouane he wroate anoper to kynge Alexander of 3is tenour.

1 Dyndimus, pe mayster of pe Bragmayvs, vn-tiff Alexander, gretyng. We hafe vndirstand pe tenour of 3i lettres & pas we ansuere. We er noste * lorde3 of this wyrld, as we sulde euermare lyffe pare in. But we ere pilgrymes in pis wyrld, and when dede commes we wende tiff oper habytaciouns. Our Syneh greue3 vs noste, ne we duelle noste in pe tabernacles of 12 synners. 2 We do na thyfte. And for pe conseycence pat we haue, we gaa noste furthe in open. We say noste pat we ere goddes, ne manen envy hase vn-to paio. Godd pat made all pat es in pis wyrld, he ordeyne3 many diuerse thynge3. For 16 warne dyuersitese ware of thynge3 pe wyrld myyte noghte stande. Godd gaffle maif fre wif, for to discerne of all thynge3 pat er in pe wyrld, and cheose whilk hym lyste. Where-fore he pat leues pe iff & chese3 pe gude, noste godde3, but goddes frende he may be called. Be-cause pat we lyffe contentently, and in quiete & reste, 3e say pat we ere godde3, or elles pat we hafe envy to godde3. But this suspiccion pat 3e hafe of vs, pertene3 to 3ow. For 3e pat er blawe3 full of 24 pe wynde of pride 3e aray 3our bodys wit gloryous clethyng, and on 3our fyngers, 3e putt iowells of golde & precyous stanes.

1 Bot I pray 3ow, what profit does pis 3ow: Golde and silver saues noste a manes saule, ne sustene3 noste mens bodys. Bot we pat knawes pe verry profitt of golde, and by kynd pare-offe, when vs thriste3, & gase to pe ryuere for to take vs a drynke, if we fynde golde in pe way, we trede apo3 it wit oure fete. For golde noper filme3 vs when we hunger, ne slokens ourse thriste, ne it hele3 noste. a maif pat es seke. If a maif thriste & drynke water, it putte3 away his thriste. Also if a maif hunger & ete mete, it does away his hunger. Bot and 36 golde ware of pe same kynde, als so3 als a maif hadde3 it, pe vice of Couetyse sulde be slokynde in hym. Be pis cause es golde iff.

due either to pride or peevishness. He deems the Brahmins live so through folly.

Dindimus to Alexander.

* Leaf 36 bk.

Man is not lord of this world, but a pilgrim in it. The virtue of the Brahmins.

God made things diverse so that the world might endure.

He gave man free will to choose of all that which him list. Not they, but the Greeks, seem envious of the gods.

Gold and silver save none. They despise it as useless, quenching neither hunger nor thirst.

Neither does it slack the vice of covetousness.

1 Two lines with small red capital D and small cursive d in the margin beside. 2 MS. synners with a contraction mark over the y.
The more one has the more one desires.
The Greeks worship wicked men, being themselves wicked, offering up beasts to their idols. Thus do they, who shall die, honour themselves.

For ay pe mare pat a man be hase pare-offe, pe mare he content. Wikked men are wyrchippede amang53 sow. For comonly a man lufes hym pat es lyke tift hym selfe. 3e say pat godd5 takes nane hede tift dedly thynge. And nuner-pe-lesse 3e bygge 4 temples, and makes autres in pam, and settis vp mawmettes abowun pa, and grete delye hase when bestes ere offerde, & in pam, and at your name es noysede, pis was done to pi fader, to thyn Eldfader, & tift aff thi progenytours. And pe 8 same also es highte on-to pe. Wit swilke wyrchipes pay ere rewarded, pat knaves notie pa selfe dedly.' When Alexander hadd3 redd pis lettre onane he sente anoper agayne and that was of this tenour pe whilk pat folowes.1

* Leat 37. Alexander to Dindims.
The Brahmins live as they do because they do not mingle with other men, but are shut off from their idols. They suffer even as those who lie in prison. He holds them as wretched fools, and could he but do it would march towards them with an army to make them leave their miserable life and become warriors.

For ay pe mare pat a man be hase pare-offe, pe mare he content. Wikked men are wyrchippede amang53 sow. For comonly a man lufes hym pat es lyke tift hym selfe. 3e say pat godd5 takes nane hede tift dedly thynge. And nuner-pe-lesse 3e bygge 4 temples, and makes autres in pam, and settis vp mawmettes abowun pa, and grete delye hase when bestes ere offerde, & in pam, and at your name es noysede, pis was done to pi fader, to thyn Eldfader, & tift aff thi progenytours. And pe 8 same also es highte on-to pe. Wit swilke wyrchipes pay ere rewarded, pat knaves notie pa selfe dedly.' When Alexander hadd3 redd pis lettre onane he sente anoper agayne and that was of this tenour pe whilk pat folowes.1

2 * 1 Alexander, pe so of godd5 Amon5 & of pe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges & lorde of lorde3, vn-to Dyndymus kyng of pe Bragmyns we sende. For als mekif als 3our duellynge es in pat partye of pe werlde fra pe begynynge, whare na strangers 16 may com to 30w, bot if it be rytfe fewe, ne 3e may noste passe forthe of 3our cuntree, but als swa say 3e, are parred in, and na ferrere may passe; parefore 3e magnyfye 3our manere of lyfynge and suppose3 pat 3e are blyssed be-cause pat 3e er so spered in, 20 pat if 3e walde neuer so gladly passe furthe for to lere pe customes pat oper men vse3, 3e may noste; and nyft-3e wifte, 30 w-by-houe3 nedis suffere pat caytesfite pat 3e lyfle in. Wharefore it semes bi 30ur techyne, that pay pat ligge3 in presonii, 24 are als mekif at comend3 als 3e, pe whilke vn-to paire lyues ende suffres sorowe and nede. And as me thynke, pe guordesse pat ruse 30w of, may wele be lykkened to pe paynes of pam pat ere in presonii. And so pat that our lawe demes to be done t[i]ll wikked 18 men, 3e suffere kyndely. And pare-fore hym pat we halde wyse, 3e halde an Ebbere fule.3 Sothely me thynk 30ur lyfynge es noste blyssed bot wrechid and as it ware a chastying to 30we. I swere 30w by oure godde3 of myghte, pat, & I myghte come 32 to 30w with an oste, I sulde gare 30w leue 30ur wrechid lyfle, and by-come men of armes, als many of 30w als ware able.' When Alexander had sent this lettre tiff Dyndimus he gart

1 The second vowel of folowes is often written so small as to render it uncertain whether it is an o or e.
2 Four lines with red capital A.
3 fou written in MS. before fule and scratched out. This word fou or fou was complete and not a half-written word, as the MS. shows.
Rayse vp a pelare of Marble a wonder grete, & an heghe, and
gart writt pare-apon this title wit lettres of grewe, of layyne,
and of pe langage of Inde. 'I Alexander, Philipp son of
Macedoyne, after he discomfytour & he dedd of Darius & Porus
come on werre vn-to this place.'

1 Fra peine kyng Alexander & his Oste removed & come in-
tiff a felde; pat was called Actea & pare pay lugged. Abowte
pat felde was a thikke wodd of tresesse berand frayte; of pe
whilke wilde meyn pat duelt in pe Same wodd vssede for tiff hate
pare fude, whase bodyes ware grete as geauntez, & pare
clethynge were made of skynnes of dyuerse beste. And when
pay saw Alexander Oste luge pare, onane pare come oute of pe
wodd; a grete multitude of pam wit lange roddes in pare handz &
bi-gaun for to feghte wit pe oeste. And pan Alexander commanded
pat all [pe] oeste schlude sette vp a schowte at anes. And also
sone als pe wyldes meyn herde pat2 noyse, pay were wondere fered
be-cause pay had neruer be-fore herde swilke a noyse. And than
pay be-gaun to flee hedir & thedir in pe wodd. And Alexander &
his meyn persued pam and slew of pam vii xxx iiiij. And pay slew
of Alexander knyghtes xxvij. In pat felde Alexander & his
oste lenged iiiij dayes and vetailed pam of pat frayte pat growed
in pe wodd;

3 Fra peine pay remowen and come tiff a grete ryuer, & lugged
pam pare. And as it ware abowte none, pare come apo in pam
a wilde man, als mekiff als a geaunte. And he was rughe of
hare alt ouer, and his hede was lyke tiff a swyne, And his voyce
also. And when Alexander saw hym, he bad his knyghtis tak
hyrm & bryng hym bi-for hym. And when pay come abowte
hym, he was na thynge fered, ne leddy neste, bot stodd baldly bi-
fore pam. And when Alexander saw that, he comanded pay
subde take a zouge damesett & nakken hir & sett hir bi-forre hym.
And pay did soo. And omane, he ranne apo in hir romyandd as
he hadd bene wodd. Bot pe knyghtes wit grete desicctee rette
yrm fra hym. And ay he romyed & made grete mane. And
efte pay broghte hym tiff Alexander and sett hym bi-forre hym.
And Alexander wonderd gretey of his figure. And pam he
Alexander raised up a pillar and wrote his victories
on it in Greek,
Latin, and
in the lan-
guage of
India.
They come
to a forest
full of wild
men eating
fruit and
clothed in
the skins of
beasts.
They fight
Alexander
with rods
in their
hands.

4 Five lines with large red F, small j
beside.
Wondrous trees, mountains, and valleys.

gerte bynd hym tiff a tree & make a fyre abowte hym & bryne hym. And so pay did. 1 Fra þeine þay removed & come tiff anoper felde in þe whilke þare ware growand treesse, of a wonder-

fult heghte, and þay bigan for to spryngye vp at þe soð rylynge; 4 And bi þe soð settynge þay wyted a-way in-to þe erthe agayne. At þe firste houre of þe day þay bi-gaun to spryngye oute of þe erthe, & so þay wex ay to myldaye, and það þay bi-gaun to decrese. And by þe soð settynge þay ware in þe erthe agayne, s And was na thyng of þam sene bi-fore on þe morne. Þir treeses bare a fruyde wonder swete of reflyayre bat þay [ware] bitter of taste. When Alexander saw þat fruyte he bade a knyghte bryng hym þareoffe. And he went & tuk þare-offe, and onane 12 a wikked spirit smate hym, and be-lyfe he was dede. And það þay herdi a voyce in þe ayer þat said on þis wyse: ‘What mað so neghes þir treesse he saft dye onane.’ Þare was also in þat felde fewles wonder make & tame. Bot what mað so layde 16 nande on any of þam, onane þare come fire oute of þam, & brynt hym riȝte greusly.

2 Than þay removed fra þeine, And come tiff a Mountayne, þat was so lye, þat þay ware viij dayes in gangyng ar þay 20 myȝte wyne to þe heghte þare-offe. And when þay come to þe heghte of it, þare come agaynes þam a grete multitude of dragones, Serpentes, and lyones þe whilke turmentid Alexander & his meû reghte gretely. And at þe laste, þay askaped þaire 24 daungere, and went doune of þe mountayne and come in-tiff a vaylay þat was so myrke þat vnethes myghte ane of þam See anoper. In þat depe valay ware tressee growand of whilke þay fruyte & þe lefes ware wonder saunory in þe tystynge, and reueltis 28 of water faire & clere. Agichte dayes contemplyu þay saw naï soð. And at þe viij dayes end þay come to þe fote of a mountayne whare all þe Oste thurgh a wikked thikk ayer ware so gretley diseossed þat þay ware in poynte to hafe bene choked 32 þare-offe. And when þay come a-bown on þe mountayne, þay fande þe ayer mare sotte, and þe lighte of þe day mare clere. And þus þay ware wendand ypwarde, on þis Mountayne Elleneð, xj, days wit grete tranaiel. And when þay come to þe 36
The mountains that border the skies. The battle with the Basilisk. 91

heigheste of pis Mountayne, pay saw on þe toþer syde faire weder & byghte. And þai pay went downe of pis Mountayne, and come in till a gret playne of whilk þe erthe was wonder rede.

4 And in pis playne þære ware growande tresesse wit-outten nowmer; and þay passed note a cubit in heghte, & þaire fruyte & þaire leves ware passandyly swepte as þay had bene byges. And þay fande þære reuells riȝte many, of clere water as cristaliate.

8 And it was als nureschand to manes body, as it hadd bene mylke wit-outen any oþer mete. Thurgþ þat ilk playne þay went fourty .xl. days, and þaþ þay com till wonder hegte Mountaynes; and it semed as þe toppes had towched þe firma-

12 And þir Mountaynes ware als brant vp-riȝte as þay had bene walles. So þat þære was na clymyng vpon þam. And at þe laste þay fande twa passage þe-twix þase Mountaynes, of whilk, þe tane streched to-warde þe west, and þe toþer towarde þe Este. Than Alexander demed þat þat dyuysen be-twix þase Mountaynes was made thurg þe Nous flode. And þaþ þay went by þat passage þat streched to warde þe Este Seveni days. And on þe heghten viij. day þay fande a Basilisc þat men calleþ a Cocatrys, a grete & ane horrible. And because of his grete edle he was fouþ stynkand, *pis ilke Basilisc was so venymous, þat note aff anely thurg his stynke, bot also thurg his sighte allane, whayn so he luked oþ, he sulde dy

16 onane; þaþ þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes, as þay passed thurg þe strayt way dyed thikk-falde thurg þe sighte of þat 1 Basilisc. And when Alexander knyghtis saw þat þerliþ, þay durste passe na forther bot said:anange þaþe: ‘þe veruite of 28 oure goddes; quoþ þay, ‘es biforn vs, þat schewes vs þat we schulde ga na forþir.’ Bot Alexander went bi hym anc vpon an hegte cragge, where he myghte see on ferrom fra hym. And þai he saw þis pestellencius beste þe Basilisc lygg speande in myddes of þe passage. þe kynde of hym was þat, als so sone als he felid a maþ or a beste com þere hym, for to open þis egline & stare appoið þam, and als many als he luked oþ, solde sudaynly fatie douþ & dye. When Alexander had sene hym, Be lyfe he went done of þe 3 cragge, and gart sett a merke þat na maþ sulde passe. And

They climb this mountain for eleven days and then they come through clear weather into a land of red earth grow-
inig dwarf trees with wonder-
fully sweet fruit. And here they find crystal streams whose waters nourish as though they were milk. They march through that plain forty days, and then they come to mountains whose tops reach the skies and in which were two passages, one towards the west and the other towards the east, which Alexander thinks were made by the Flood. They go east seven days. On the eighth day they find a Basilisk that slays through look alone. He kills many. Alexander surveys him from afar off.

1 þat inserted above the line by scribe.
2 þ first turned into e, then finally erased between þe and cragge.
Alexander approaches him shielded by a mirror, so that the Basilisk slays himself with his own glances.

The Basilisk being slain they burned him, and praise Alexander.

At last they found their way barred, and must come back to the plain. Then they went westward fifteen days and then to the left. They come to a mountain of adamant hung around with chains of gold and with sapphire steps.

Alexander goes up the mountain with twelve princes, and finds a wondrous palace of precious

| 1 | Four lines with red capital & small f beside. |
| 2 | Four lines with red capital A. |
Then Alexander meets the warden of the holy trees. 93

a temple all of golde & of precious stanes, And bi-fore þe
dores þare-offe þare was a vyne of golde, berande grapes of
charburncles, of Rubyes, Dyamande, and many oper maneres of
precious stanes. Þan kyng Alexander & his prince saw in-to
þe palace ; and fande þare a man liegand in a bedd of golde, and
courd with a riche clathe of golde. And he was rype a mekill
man and a faire, And his berde & his heued ware als whitt
als any Wolfe ; and hym seemed lyke a Bischopp. Als sow als
Alexander & his prince saw þis alde man þay kneled downe
on paire knesse and saluste hym. And he answerd & saide :
Welcom Alexander,' quoþ he, 'I telle the þou saft see, þat neuer
flesely man bi-fore this tyme sawe ; And þou saft here þat neuer
erthly man herde are.' And Alexander answerd & sayd : 'Maste
blyssed alde man,' quoþ he, 'how base þou knawying of me ?'
'For sothe,' quoþ he, 'bi-fore Noi fode couerde all þe erthe,
16 knewe I bathe the, & thi dedis. I wate wele þou desyres for
to See þe haly treec of þe Sonw And þe Mone þe whilk be telle3
thynge3 þat ere to come.' ‘3an for sothe,’ quoþ Alexander,'per es na-thynge þat I desyre mare, þan for to see þama.'
And he was rye gladde. Þan saide þe alde man till hym:
'And þe be clene of flesely dede wit women, þan es it leefull
to 3ow to see þama and to entir in-to þat haly place þat es
a sette of godde.' And if þe be nogte clene, it es nogte leefull
24 to 3ow. ‘3is, sir, sothely,' quoþ Alexander, 'we ere clene.'
Þama raise þe alde man vp of þe bedd þat he lay in, and
sald vn-to þama : 'Puttes ofte 30ur rynges3, quoþ he, 'and 3oure
clothes, & 3our schone, and followes me.' And þay dyd1 so.
28 And þama Alexander tuk wit hym tholomeus and Antiochus,
& folowed þe alde man, and went thurgh þe wodd þat
was abounð of þe Mountayne closed with mannes handes.
Þe * treesse of þat wodd ware an hundreth & soo fote lange &
yhe, and þay ware lyke lopers or Olyue treesse; And out
of þama þare ryn rykyles & fynne bawme. And as þay went
thurgh þat wodd þay saw a tree wondere fye, in þe whilke
þare satt a mekill fawle. þat tree hadd noper þare-onð lefes ne
fruyte. Þe feule þat satt þare-onð hadd onð his hedd a creste
lyk tili a pacokke, & his becke also crested. Abowe þis nekke,
he hadd ebothirs lyke golde. Þe hynder of hym was lyk purpure;
metal and stones.

1 The scribe first wrote de and then changed the e into a y, making it into dyd.

He goes into the
palace.
He finds an
aged man
there of
appearance.
The aged
man speaks
and tells
him he
shall see
and hear
what never
earthily
man did
before.
He shall
have his
desire and
know the
future.
He canonly
see the
holy
trees of
the
sun and
the
moon if
clean of
fleshy
deeds.

He must
put off
everything to
see them.
Alexander,
Ptolemy, and
Antiochus fol-
low the

* Leaf 39
bk.

old man
through the
wood on the
mountain,
through
wondrous
trees that
shed in-
conce and
balm.
and pe tayle was owmned: ouerthwart, wit a colour rede as rose & wit blewe. And his fethers ware rizte faire schynande. Wheyn Alexander saw pis fewle he was gretely meruailled of pe faired of hym; pai saide pe Alde man: 'Alexander,' quo] 4 he, 'pis ilke fewle pat pou here seese es a fenix.' And pai pay went forper thurgh pe forsaid wodd, And come to thise haly tre3 of pe soñ & pe mone pat growed in myddeg of pe wodde. And pai pe alde man saide tiff Alexander: 'Luke vp,' 8 quo] he, 'to zone haly tre3, and thynke in thi hert what prezatee so pe liste, and pou saif he a trewe answere. Bot lake pat pou speke na worde in opyn. And pare-by saif pou witt pat it es a gude spirit, pat knawes thi thoghte.' Thir 12 twa tre3 were wonder hye. And pe tree of pe Soñ had lenes lyk fyne golde, reed & faire schynande. And pe tree of pe mone had leses whitt als syluer & faire schynande. And pai walde Alexander hafe Offrede Sacrafyce to pir tre3. Bot 16 pe alde man walde nogte suffre hym, bot said: 'It es noyte leuenuit,' quo] he, 'in pis haly place, nowper to offre encense, ne to sla na besteg, Bot to knele doun to pe boles of pir tre3 & kysse pai & pray pe soñ & pe mone to gisse trew answered.' 20 And pai Alexander spirred pe alde man, in what langage pe tre3 sulde gisse pai answers. And pe alde man answered & said: 'The tree of pe Son,' quo] he, 'answers owper ai in pe langage of Inde or elfs of grewe. And pe tree of pe Mone 24 begyme3 wit pe langage of grewe & ende3 wit pe langage of Inde.' And as pay stode pus spekande, Sudaylny pare come a bryghte beme fra pe weste pat schane ouer ai pe wodde. And pai Alexander kneled doun, and kyssede pe tre3 an 28 thoght pus in his hert: 'Sai7 I conquere ai pe werlde, and efterwardes wit pe victorye wende hame to Macedoyne till my moder Olympias, and my sisters?' And * pai7 pe tree of pe soñ answered softly in pe langage of Inde, And said pir verse3: 32

'Tú dominátorum orbis dominus simul et pater extas,
Set patrum rignum1 per temporá nulla videbis;'

pat es at say, 'pou eft bathe lorde & fader of atte pe werlde,
Bot pe Rewme of thy Fadyrs saif pou neuer see wit thyñ eglime.' 36

* pai7 bygañ Alexander to thynke how lange he sulde lyffe,

1 Skt in MS.
Having heard the answers he weeps and goes back.

and whate deder he sulde dye. And pe tree of pe Mone
ansuerd by pir twa verse3:

'Anno completo vinius & mensibus octo,
De quo confidis tibi mortis pocula dabit.'

Pat es at saye, 'A twelvemonth & aughte monethes saifi pou lyff.'
And pað he pat pou traisteg oun, saifi gisse pe a drynkte of deder.'
Pað bi-gañ Alexander to thynke in his hert oun pis wyse,

'Tell me nów, haly trée,
Wha he ès pat sall slása môe.'

And pað pe tree of pe soûl ansuerd by pir twa verse3:

'Si tibi pandatur vir qui tua facta resoluet,
illum confrynges & sic mea carmina fallent.'

Pat es at saye: 'And I schow the pe manes name, pat saifi vudo
thi dedis, pou will slaa hym, and so saifi my prophycye fayle.'
And pañ pe forsaide al man saifi tif Alexander: 'Dise
na mare pir trees,' quoð he, 'wit thyne askynges. Bot tourne
we agaynewre, as we come hedir.' And pañ Alexander & his twa
prynce3 wit hym tourned agayne wit pe alde mân. And ay as
he went, he weped bitterly, bi-cause of his schorte yme; and
his prynce3 also weped riȝte sare. Bot he commanded pañ pat
pay schulde noȝte telle to na mân of his Oste pat that pay hadde
herde & sene. And when pay ware comen to pe forsaide Palace
pe alde [man] saifi vn-tif Alexander: 'Torne bakke agayne,'
quoth he, 'for it es noȝte leefull to na mân to passe forthire.
If pe liste wende toward pe weste, pou saifi noȝte tranette full
lange are pou come to pe place, where pe liste to bee.' And
when pe alde mân had saifi pir worde3, he went in-to pe palace
and Alexander and his twa prynce3 went donû by pe forsaide
gree3 & come to pe Oste.

Apon pe morne Alexander & his Oste removed peine & went
agaynewarð fyftene days, And come agaynewre to pe forsaide
playne & pare pay lugged pañ. And pare at pe entrec of pa
twa forsaide wyse, Alexander gart rayse vр twa pelers of Marble,
and by-twixe pañ he haude a table of golde, on pe whilke was
wretyn in pe langage of grewe, hebrew, of latyne, and of Inde,
one this wyse: 'I, Alexander, Phillippo soûl of Macedoyne,

Did he but know
the man's
name, he
would try
to undo the
prophecies.
The old
man bids
him not
incommode
the trees.
He goes
away weeping.
He com-
mmands his
friends to
tell no
man.
The old
man bids
him turn
back and
travel to
the west.

Alexander journeys
fifteen
days and
then raises
up two
marble
columns,
between
them a
table of

1 Four lines with red capital A.
King Alexander and Queen Candace.

gold with letters in Greek.
* Leaf 40 bk.
Hebrew, Latin, and Indian, telling of his great deeds and guiding after-comers. Hence they go westwards towards Macedonia and come to the country of Prasiac. The men of the country bring him presents. There is in that country a city of precious stones ruled over by a widow queen and her sons. Alexander writes to Queen Candace sending presents, asking her to come that they may offer sacrifice together. Queen Candace writes to Alexander on his conquerors, but proclaims that they may not sett their peleris here, after he dedd of Darius kyng of Perse and of Porus kyng of Inde. What man so will passe forper late hym * tourne one he lefte hand. For wha so tourne3 one he riste hande he safi fynde many obstacle3 & greuance3 pat 4 safi peraunenture lett his agayne-commynge.

1 Fra peine pay removed thurgh pat playne and lefte pase strayte wayes, takandī pe way westwardī pe gayueste towards Macedoyne. And at pe laste pay come toff a cuntree pat highte 8 Prasiac, And pare pay lugged paum. And whenī men of pat cuntree herdī of pe commynge of Alexander, wit grete wirchippe pay broghite hym grete presante3 of swilk thynges as pay haddī in paire lande, pat es at say, skyanns of fisich lyke vn-to pe 12 skyanns of pardes, or of lyouns also, and lawmpray skyanns of sex cubites lange. In pat cuntree was a noble citee allī of precius stanes made wit-owtted lyne or sande, sett apōī an hilt. Of pe whilke citee, a wirchipfull lady and a faire haddī 16 pe lordevichpe. Pis lady was wedowe and scho haddī three sones. The firste of paum highte Candeolus, pe secandī Mar-cipius, And pe thirde hight Carator. To pis lady Alexander sent a lettre of pis tenour:

2 'Alexander pe sooī of goddī Amōnī & of pe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes vn-to quene Candace of Merōni ioy & gretynig. We sende 3ow ane ymage of goddī Amōnī allī of fyne golde; And ∴parefore comeī till vs pat we may wende 24 togeder to pe Mountayn for to make sacrafyce pare to goddī Amōn.' Whenī pe Quene Candace hadī reddī pis lettre, Scho sent hir embassatoirs till kyng Alexander wit grete presante3 and with a lettre of this tenouer:

3 'Candace, quene of Merōnī, vn-tiff Alexander, kyng of kynges3, ioy. Wele we knawe pat 3e hase by renelaciō of goddī Amōnī pat 3e schuldē conquere Perse, Inde and Egipte, and subiecte vn-to 3ow allī oper naciones. And allī pat 3e hase 32 done, nostī allany was granted but also of allī oper godde3. Tiff vs pat hase faire saules & bryghte it nedē noghte to make sacrafyce to goddī Amōnī in pe Mountaynes. Newer-pe-lesse because we will nostī offende 3owere maiestate, we sende till 36

1 Four lines with red capital F and small f in margin beside.
2 Four lines with red capital A and a beside.
3 Four lines with red capital C and c in the margin.
King Alexander and Queen Candace. The story of Candeolus. 97

Amon 30ure godd' a Corön of golde and precyous stanes. And teiw chynes 1 of golde sett full of precious stanes. And vn-to 30ow we sende a hundrethe Besauntez 2 of golde; And twa 4 hundreth papeiayes closed 3 in cagz 4 of golde, c childer of Ethipes, cc apes, ccece Olyphantis. xxxiiii vnvcornes, iij pantes skynnw, of pardez 5 & lysones ccece, and we besoke 30wre hye maieste pat 3e will notyfye vn-tili vs bi 30ver wirchipfull lettres, wheder 3e hane conquered alle pe wereld and made it subiecte vn-to 30ow or noyte. 5 Amangez her embassatours pat scho sent til Alexander pare was a wonder crafty & a suteit payntoure. And hym scho charged pat he schulde besely by-halde Alexander 2 & purtray his fygure in a parchemyne skynn w and brynge it to hir. And so he did. Alexander ressayned pe forsaid gyftes reuerently and sent hir noble gyftes agayne wyt hir embassatours. And when pay come hame pe payntour tukke hir pe fegure of Alexander purtrayed as I saide be-fore. And when pe quene saw it, Scho was riste gladde, for scho desyred gretly for to see his fygure.

2 After pis ane of pe quene somes pat hight Candeolus went furthe of pe Citee wyt his wyfe and a fewe of his menzee for to take pe sporte. And onane pe kyng of pe Bebrikex, kwaung pe fairehed of Candeolys wyfe, come appoi payn with a grete multitude of mei, and slew many of Candeolus menzze and refte hym his wyfe & went his way. And pa'n Candeolus and 24 his mei pat ware lette on lyfe went till Alexander Ost ex for to be-seke hym of helpe agaynes pe kynge of Bebrikex. And pe waches of peoste tukke Candeolus & brughte hym bi-fore Tholomeus, pat was pe second 5 persoid after Alexander. And 28 Tholomeus spurred hym what he was, & what he did pare.

' I am,' quop he, 'quene Candace som & pis day als I went wit my wyfe & aprene menzee for to take pe sporte, pe kynge of pe Bebrikex come appoi vs wit a grete multitude of mei and base slayne many of my menzee & refte me my wyfe. And pare-fore I am come in heder for to beseeke my lord, pe Empeour, of helpe & socoure.' When Tholomeus had herd' pis onane he garte take kepe of Candeolus & went till Alexander tentis 36 and wakkned Alexander & talde hym & talde ilk a dele pat Candeolus had talde hym. And when Alexander hadd' herde

1 Chenes first written; but when the scribe had written e he wrote y over it and joined it to the next letter. 2 Four lines with red capital A.
Alexander's stratagem with Candeolus.

Alexander bids Ptolemy puton a crown as though he were Alexander and let him send for Antiochus, and Alexander will come as Antiochus and ask counsel of Alexander as though he were Antiochus. Ptolemy does as Alexander bids him. Alexander then counsel that the king should be commanded to deliver up Candeolus' wife that night or otherwise destroy his city. Candeolus thanks Alexander as though he were Antiochus. Alexander does as he counselled and with a great force calls on the king to deliver back Candeolus' wife or else they will burn his tale he badd hym gange agayne till his tent and do a coronn on his hede and putt apone hym pe kyngge clothynge, and sett hym in the kyngge trone & say vn-to Candeolus pat he was kyng Alexander. 'And bidd an of thi men,' quo he, 'fche vn-to pe Antyochus, And late hym bryng me to pe iste of Antyochus, and wher I come bi-for thee telle me bi-fore Candeolus aff pat he talde the. And aske me conseil, als I ware Antyochus, what es beste to do in pat mater.' 8 Tholomeus went and didd aff als Alexander badd hym. And he asched Alexander in stedd of Antyochus be-fore Candeolus what was beste to do. And Alexander ansered & sayde on herant Candeolus: 'Wrichipuffl Emperour,' quo he, 'if it be 12 plesyng to your maiestee I will go wit Candeolus pis same nyghte to pe kyngge of pe Berokee, and comande hym one your byhalne pat he yelde Candeolus his wyfe agayne. And if he will ynde do soo, I saff late hym witt pat 3e saft sende a grete 16 powere to his Citee & brynke it vp stikke & stoure.' When Candeolus badd herde hym say pus, he knellyd vn-till hym & said: 'A a, wrichipuffl Antyochus,' quo he, 'wele walde it seme pe for to be a kyng for pe wyde witt and pe manhede pat es 20 in the.' Tha kyng Alexander tuke wit hym a grete powere and went apone pe same nyghte wit Candeolus vn-to pe Citee, whare pe kyngge of pe Berokee lay. And whan pay come to pe citee, pe waytes cryed apone payn, and askede what pay ware. 24 And Alexander ansered & sayde: 'Candeolus,' quo he, 'es here wit am Oste of men, and pe cause of his commynge es to be restorede agayne of his wyfe pe whilke your kyngge raueste away fro hym pis same day. And my lord kyng Alexander commande 30w pat 3e delyuer hir anone, or severly we saft brynke this citee & your selve are we passe hethyn. And when pe men of pe citee herde this, pay ware ferde ynothe 2 and onane went to pe kyngge palace & brakke vp pe 3ates, & tuke Candeolus 32 wyfe & delyuerd hir till hir lorde. Pap Candeolus knelled dou til Alexander & saide vn-till hym: 'A a, my dere frende,' quo he, 'wichipuffl Antyochus, Blyssed mot pou be for pis grete gudnes pat pou hase schewed mee. And I beseeke the nowe pat 36

1 The scribe has written Antyochus instead of Candeolus, then scratched it out, and written Candeolus again.

2 The scribe has first written ynghe and inserted the o above.
\[ \text{Alexander and Queen Candace.} \]

\[ \text{the city. The citizens revolt and return Candeolus' wife. Candeolus thanks Alexander again as Antiochus, and invites him to come to his mother's city. At this Alexander is glad, for he had greatly desired to see Queen Candace and her city. They ask leave of the Emperor as it were. He goes with Candeolus. They come to mountains that reach up to the sky, with wondrous tall trees and vines with great bunches of grapes and nut-like gourds, and many apes were there. They come to Candace, who comes arrayed to meet them as a queen. She is of great beauty; and her palace is rich. She takes him to her privy chamber with its wonderful works of art.} \]

1 The scribe first wrote 'an hege', but then scratched out the an.

2 On leaf 42 it continues lyke cu-to cedres.

\[ \text{pou will vouche-saffe for to wende with me vn-to my moder quene Candace, pat Scho may rewarde pe for pis pat pou hase done for me.' And when Alexander herde this he was ryste gladde. For he had gretyly desycre for to see quene Candace & hir citee also. And pan he sayd: 'Goo we,' quop he, 'to pe emperour and ashe hym leue.' And pay did soo; and when he had leue, he went wit Candeolus. And as pay went to-gedir pay come till 1 hege 8 mountaynes pat reched vp to pe clowdes and apoi pan pare growed trees of a wonderful heghte lyke * vn-to 2 cedres pat bare appilis of Inde ryste grete, Of pe whilk Alexander wonnderde hym gretly. Pay saw also pare vynes growe wit wondere grete bobbis of grapes; for a man 3 mystie vunethes bere and of pane. Pare ware also trees pat bare nytte3 grete als gourdde3. And pare ware also many apes. Fra 4 peine pay went & come to pe citee of quene Candace. 16 And when Candace herd tell pat hir son Candeolus and his wyfe ware comande and ware safe & sounde, And at a messangere of kyng Alexander come wit pane, scho was wonder gladde; and ouane scho arayed hir ryally as a quene suld be, and sett apoi hir hedde a crowduff rychie aif of golde sett fuff of precyouse stanes, and went furthe wit hir lordes to pe 3ates of hir palace, for to mete hir son Candeolus and Alexander messanger. This quene was a wondere faire lady & a semely; And when Alexander saw hir, hym thoght hir sene his moder Olympias. Hir palace was wonder ryllie & precyouse and aif pe ruffe pare-of schane wit golde & precyouse stanes. Tha2 quene Candace tuke Alexander 28 bi pe hande, And ledd hym vp till hir chambr, where pare ware beddes arayed wit pe fyneste clothes of golde pat myghte be getyn; And pat chambr was of golde & precyous stanes, pe whilke are called Onychyns & pe burde3 & pe bynkes of enour & Smaragde3 & Amatistes. Pe Pelers of pe Palace ware aif of Marble, And pare ware grauen in pane cartes of werre, pat semed to mannes sighte as pay had bene rymmand; And Olyphauntes treand men vnder payre fete. Vundernethe pat Palace rane a water wonder swete, & clere as any cristalle.} \]

\[ \text{1 The scribe first wrote 'an hege', but then scratched out the an.} \]

\[ \text{2 On leaf 41 we have the words lyke to cu-to cedres.} \]
Queen Candace confronts Alexander.

The next day she went alone with Alexander to her withdrawing room, which lies beyond her bedroom. Her withdrawing room is moved on wheels by elephants. Alexander utters his wonder.

* Leaf 42 bk.
Queen Candace addresses him by name. Alexander's fear.

She shows him his portrait. Alexander fears again.

She rails at him that he, the conqueror of the world, is fallen into a woman's hands.

Alexander is angered. She rails at him further.

That day Alexander etc wit quene Candace & hir childire.

1 Apoyn pe morne quene Candace tuk Alexander by pe right hande & ledd hym in-tielt hir bedd-chambir, and name wit pañ, Bot pay twa allañ. Dis chambir was couerde all ouer wit-in 4 wit golde & precious stanes. And it schane wit-in, as it had bene pe sonne. And out of pis chambir scho ledd hym in-tielt a wit-drawyng chambir made of cypresse. Dis chambir was sett apon foure wheles by crafte of clergy; And twenty xxti Oly-s phauntis drewte it wheles as scho wolde haze it. And whai Alexander & pe quene ware entrede in-to-tat chambir, omne it stirred & by-gan for to remowe. And pañ Alexander was astonayde & merunyled hym greetly & said vn-to pe 12 quene: 'For sothe,' quoñ he, ' &pir meruaiifs ware in our cuntree pay ware rihte commendable & mekiff worthy *to be praysede.' The quene answerde: 'Pou saise sothe, Alexander,' quoñ scho, 'pay ware mare commendable amange þe Greke, 16 pañ amange þis.' And also sone als Alexander herde hys name be neuneede, he was grettly trublende, and his vesage bi-gan to ware pale, and his chere to change. And than the quene said eftvn-to hym: 'Alexander,' quoñ she, 'for to schewe 20 pe mare verrayly pat pou est Alexander, com with me.' And pañ scho tuk hym by pe hande & leedde hym in-tielt onope chambir, and schwed hym pare his awenõ Figure portrayed in a parchemyn skyne. And wheñ Alexander saw pat, he wex 24 pale & wanné & biganue to tremble. And pañ pe quene said vn-tielt hym: 'Alexander,' quoñ scho, 'where-fore est þou ferde, & why chaunge þou chere. Thou pat hasse distroyed all þe werlide; conquerour of Perse, of Inde, of Mede, and many oþer 28 rewmes & lande3, Now arte þou witowttew scheddynghe of blode fallen in þe dawnere & in þe handes of quene Candace vnauysly. And þare-by may þou wele knawe þat a manes hert sulde on na wyse be enhanccl in pride. For if all it bee þat ofte tynamne 32 grete prospevtée fall to man, Sodayly fañe aduersite telt hym wheñ he lest wences.' When Alexander herde þis he bigan to greyste wit þe teethe and to torne his hede hedir & thedir, And quene Candace saide vn-tielt hym: 'Whare to 36 angers þou þe,' quoñ scho, ' & trublæ þi selte? What may now thi grete Imperiatt glory, thi witt & þi myghte serene

1 Four lines with red capital A.
the office?" Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Forsothe, quop Alexander, ' resonably I am angry at my seflse bi-cause I hafe na swerde here.' Quop þe quene: 'I suppose þou hadd a swerde, newe, what walde do pare-wit? ' Sothely, quop he, ' bi-cause I hate wilfully betrayed my-selfe vn-to þis. First I solde sla þe and þau, I dowte it noȝt, I sulde be slayne for þe.' 'Now for sothe,' quop scho, 'þis was wisely & manfully sayde.

8 Neuer-pe-less be nathynge heuy. For as þou deluyerde my soþw wyfe Candeolus oute of þe daungere of þe kyng of Bebrikes Swaa saif I deluyer the oute of þe daungere of thy enemies þat þou hase here. For I say þe in certayne, and it ware knawen þat þou ware here vn-to my menée, onane þay walde sla þe by-cause þou slewe Porus þe kyng of Inde. For my soþw wyfe Carator was his daughter.' And when þoþ scho had þaid, Scho tuk Alexander bi þe hande & ledd hym forthe in-till hir forchambre and said vntill hir sondes: 'My dere sondes,' quop scho, 'I pray sow late vs make þis knyghe of Alexander gude chere, and schew hym aþ þe humanyte þat we caif. For Alexander has schewed vs grete frendchiphe and grete gudnesse.' And þau hir joste ansuerde & said: 'Moder,' * quop he, 'sothe it es þat he es a messangere of Alexanders, & a knyghe of his, and þat he deluyerde my broþer wyfe of þe hande of þe kyng of þe Bebrikes and broghte hym & hir hame vn-till vs bathe safe & sownde. Neuer-pe-lesses my wyfe constreyneþ me for to do Antyocho to dede bi-cause of þe dede of hir Fadir Porus, whilke Alexander slewe, So þat Alexander may hafe sorow for his knyghe. Quop quene

28 Candace þain: 'Lefe sond, what wirchip may we get pare-offe if we sla þis knyghe þus traytourously.' And þain Candeolus sayde wit a grete tre, 'Pis knyghe,' quop he, 'saufed me & my wyfe & broghte vs hede safe & sone; And als safe saif I hafe hym, agayne till his lorde, or I saiif be dede parefore.' And Carator ansuerde & saide: 'Broþer,' quop he, 'what says þou? will þou pat anythere of vs here sla þe oþer? ' In gud fayth the broþer,' quop he, 'it es noþte my will, ne my list. Neuer-

36 pe-lesses if it be thi liste, I am redy, rather þau þis knyghe be dedde.' And when þo þe quene saw þat hir sondes walde ayther of þau sla þe oþer, scho was wonder sary, and tuk Alexander oþ syde, and saide vn-till hym pre applying: 'A, a, kyng Alexander,' Alexander is angry at himself. Had he but a sword he would slay her and die for it. She commands him, therefore she bids him not fear, for since he helped her son she will deliver him from another son who is Porus' son-in-law. She introduces Alexander as one of his own knights, Antiochus.

* Leaf 43

Her younger son would slay him for his wife's sake, to grieve Alexander.

Candeolus offers to defend Alexander with his own life.

Candeolus appeals to Alexander to save her sons from
Alexander's stratagem and parting. The cave of the Gods.

combat by his wit, so that either slay not other, Alexander promises to do so. Alexander offers to betray Alexander to Carator.

Carator asents.

Queen Candace parts from Alexander with many gifts.

Alexander and Candeolus come to a cave. Alexander, sacrificing, goes in. He sees a great god sitting with eyes like stars. The god greets him.

quoph scho, 'whi wilt thou noȝte schewe thi witt, and helpe thurgh thi wisdom pat my sondes slaȝ noȝt ayther of þam oper?' And Alexander answerde and said: 'Late me goo speke wit þam,' quoph he. And scho lete hym goo. And he went to þam and sayde vn-to Carator: 'For sothe, Carator,' quoph he, 'I late þe wite þat if þou slaȝ me, þou saȝt wynde bot lyttyl wirchipe þarcoffe. For I say þe, kyng Alexander hase many worthery knyghtis wit hym þain I am; And þar-fore he þat hille littitt sorowe for my dede. Trowes þou þat and Alexander hadde lufed me welde þat he walde hafe sent me hyder to be killed amangæ ȝowe. Bot if þou witt þat I beken the Alexander þe slaere of þi wyfe fader & bryng hym bi-for the, 12 Swore me pat what so I asche þe, þou saȝt graunte mee it, And I sure þe bi þe faythe of my body, I saȝt bryng Alexander in-to þis palace be-force þe.' And when Carator herde this, he was rȝte glade, and trowed þat Alexander said: And so ware þe twa breþer pesede, And highte Alexander þat his askynge sulde be fulfilled als ferforth als þaire powere reched; if so ware þat he helde coventant. þain quene Candace leedd Alexander on syde & sayd vn-till hym in preuate: 'Wele ware me,' quoph scho, 20 'myghte I ilke day hafe þe present be-fore myw egnhe as I hafe myw awenþ childere. For thurgh the sulde I overcom myj Enemys.' And þain [scho] gaff Alexander a coronæ of golde sett full of preciseous dyamande, and a mantill Imperiãl of a clathe of golde *wit sternes wofen þarco-in, and sett full of preciseous stanes. And þain scho kyssed hym & oper preuce thyngæ þidde till hym, And babde hym goo in brylyssynge.

1 Than kyng Alexander and Candeolus went furthe after that 28 daye, And come tiff a grete spelune, and pare þay herberde þain. And Candeolus saide tiff Alexander: 'In this spelune,' quoph hee, 'þat you here seeȝ aȝt goddeȝ ere woun for to ete and halde þaire consaȝt.' And þain onane Alexander made sacra- 32 fyce tiff his goddeȝ and enterde in-to þe caue by hym ane. And þare he sawe a myrke clowde, & in þat myrknesse, he sawe as it ware bryghte sternes, and amangæ þase sternes he saw a grete godd'sitt, And his egnhe lyke twa lanternes. And when 36 Alexander saw hym he was so fered þat he was as it hadde bene

1 Red capital T in four lines' space and small t in margin.
in a transyng. And saw pe godde's saide vn-to hym: 'Haile, Alexander,' quop he. And Alexander answerd & said: 'Lorde,' quop he, 'what art pou?' 'I am,' quop he, 'Sens 없는chisis pat gouerne3 pe kyngdom of pe werlde and pat hace made men sugettes vn-to the. And pou hace bigged piselte manny ryalte cite3. Bat temple walde pou nane make in pe wrichhippe of me.' And Alexander answerd & said: 'Lorde,' quop he, ' & pou 8 witt graunt me pat I saij wit prosperitee come in-to Macedoyne I saij ordeyne the a temple pare salt nohte be swilke anoper in all pe werlde.' And he answerd agayne & saide: 'For sothe,' quop hee, 'Macedoyne saij pou never see wit thy 12 eghne. Neuer-pe-lesse walke Innermarcher & luke what pou see.' Alexander pau5 went forthimare & saw anoper myroke clowde and saw a godde sitt in a trone lyke a kyngne, and Alexander said vn-till hym: 'Lorde,' quop he, 'what art pou?' 'I am,' quop he, 16 'pe begynnynge of all goddes3 and Serapis es my name. I sawe the in pe lande of liby & nowe I see pe here.' 'Serapis,' quop Alexander, 'I beskke pe telle me wha it es pat salt sla me.' Quod Serapis: 'I talde pe bi-fore, pat and pe cause 20 of a manes dede ware knaweun vn-till hym, he solde dy for sorowe. Pou hace bygged a glorius citee agaynes pe whilke manny emperours salt fights. Pare-in salt thi graue be made and pare-in salt pou be beried.' And pau Alexander come oute 24 of pe cane, and tuke his leue at Candeolms and went till his Oste.

One pe morne he removed his Oste And come till a valay pat was fult of grete 2 serpentes pe whilk hade in paire heuedis Grete smaragde3. Thir serpentes3 *lyffede alt wit gyngere and 28 pepir pat growede in pe valaye. And ilke a 3ere paw feghte to- gedir and many of pau slae op3. Off pe forsaid Smaragdes tuk Alexander suum wit hym of pe gretteste pat he couthe gett.

32 Fra peine paw removed & come in-till a place in pe whilke pare ware best3 pat hade one ilke a fote tua clees as swyne hase, and pase clees ware three fote brate wit pe whilke paw smate Alexander knygtes. Paw had also heuedes lyke swyne 36 & tayles lyke lyons. Pare ware also amaneg3 pau grypes pe

---

1 Three lines with red capital O and small o in the margin.
2 MS. 'serpe' crossed out and 'serpentes'
3 Three lines with red capital F and small f in the margin beside.
The Ten Tribes of Israel.

whilke smate kynghte in pe vesage; reghte felly. Pay ware so strange pat ane of pay wolde ber away an armed kynghte & his horse also. Pay kyngke Alexander rade hedir & pedir amanget his men & comforted pay & badd pay feighte 4 manly agaynes pay wit spere & wit arowes. And so pay did. Bot pare was slayne of Alexander kynghtes ceviiii.

1 And fra peine pay removed & come tiff a grete ryuer pe whilke was twenty furlange on brede fra pe ta banke to 8 pe toper. And on pace bankes pare growed redes wonder grete and lye. Of pace redes garte Alexander mak bates & anoynte pay wit terre & talgh of beste; And badd his kynghtis row er pay in pace bates. And pay did seo. And when pe [pople]2 of pe cunntree herde tell of pe commynge of Alexander & his Oste, pay sent hym gyftes of swylk thynge3 als was in paire cuntree, pat es at say Grete spounge5 bathe whitte & purpure & schelles of pe see so grete pat an of pay walde 16 halde twa pekke's or three. Pay sent hym also wormes pat pay drew owte of pat ryuer grettete pay a manes thee, and pay ware swetter of taste pay any lysche. Pay gaffe hym Cukstoles aff rede pat ware of a wonderfull grentesse. In pat ryuer ware 20 womans pat ware wonder faire & pay hade ow pay mekit here pat rechedd dow to thaire fete. Pir women, when pay saw any strange meih swymme in pat riuer, owpet pay drownded pay in pe water, or els pay walde lede pay to pe rede; pat 24 growed ow pay water banke & garre pay lye by pay ay tiff any lyfe was in pay. Pe Macedoynes persued pay & tike twa of pay & broghte pay tiff Alexander, & pay ware als white as any snaue, and pay ware ten fote lange & paire 28 teethe were lyke dogge teethe.

2 Efter this Alexander went and closed in a maner of folkes pat are called Gog & Magog, with-in pe hille3 of Caspy. Dis folkes were of pe ten kynde3 of Israel, and pay ware leedd owte 32 of paire awen3 land bi a kyng of Perse be-cause of paire symme3 & halden in threlldom. And pay asched Alexander lease for to wende furth of pat cuntree. And Alexander gert spirre pe cause of paire thraldom, and he was encensed pat be-cause pay 36

1 Three lines with red capital A and small a in margin beside.
2 M.S. reads, And when pe of pe cunntree
3 Three lines with red capital E and small e in the margin beside.
hadd forsaken paire godde3 lawe, pat es at say, godd of IrsI, and wirchoped Calnes & oper Mawmettes, pare-fore pay were ledd'oute of paire awendan lande & halden in thralldom, and pat prophethes had prophiced be-fore pat pay sulde neuer come oute of thralldom bi-fore agayyne pe day of done. And paI Alexander ansernde & said pat he sulde sperre paI In mare seurely. And paI he garte close of saI entreI wit stane & lyme & sand; But he learns that they had forsaken the True God for Idols, and therefore they are banished and imprisoned till Doomsday. Alexander saw pat mannes labour speke myghte noIte stande in stede, he bi-soghte godd of IrsI pat if it ware his liste pat pay habade pare, pat he walde close paI in. And pe nexte nyghte 8 aftir ilk a cragge felle till oper, and so pare may nathunge passe in nor owte. And pare-by it seme3 pat it es noIte godde3 with pat pay come oute. Neuer-pe-lesse abowte pe Ende of pe welde pay saI breke oute and do mekIff schathe & slaa many 16 meI.

1 Fra peine pay removed & come to pe grete See Occaene. In pat See pay sawe une Ile a litiiff fra pe lande. And in pat Ile pay herde meI speke grewe. And paI Alexander commanded pat sumI of his knyghts sulde do off paire clothes and swyme oter to pe ile. And pay did soo. And als some als pay come in pe See pare come gret crabbes vp oute of pe water & pullede paI downe to pe grounde & drownned paI.

2 Thanne removed pay fra thethyn and went ay endlande pe See syde to-warde pe solstice of wynter trauellande xI days; and at pe laste pay come to a reede See, and pare pay lugede paI. Pare was faste by vp. And wheaI was the abowI ond pe heghte pare-offe, hym thoghte pat he was nerre pe Firmament paI pe erthe; paI he ymagined in his hert swilk a gynI how he myghte make * grippes bere hym vp in-to pe ayere. And onane he come doonne of Mountayne and garte come bi-fore hym his Maistre wrightes and comandid paI pat pay sulde make hym a chayer and trelesse it wit barre3 of Iren one ilk a syde so pat he mystc saucy sitt pare-in. And paI he gart bryngue foure gripes and tye paI faste wit Iren cheynes vn-to pe chayere, and in pe overmarke party of pe chayere he gart putt

32 Alexander and the Ten Tribes. The ocean. 105

But he learns that they had forsaken the True God for Idols, and therefore they are banished and imprisoned till Doomsday. Alexander saw that men labour spoke might not stand in stede, he bisought God of Irs and if it were his list that pay had his, that he would close pay in. And next night after all that was on a craggy felled till oper, and so pay may not change pass in nor outside. And pay-by it seemed that it was not to get water and pulled pay down to the ground and drowned pay.

2 Than removed pay from the city and went away endland pe See side to ward pe solstice of winter travelling xI days; and at last pay came to a reed See, and pay lugged pay. Pay was fast by vp. And when he was above on the height pay-off, he thought that he was nearer pe Firmament pay earth; pay he imagined in his heart such a way how he might make * grippes here him vp in-to pay ayre. And then he came down of Mountayn and garte come bi-fore him his Master Wrights and commanded pay pay should make him a chayer and trelesse it with barre3 of Iren one ilk a syde so that he mystic saucy sitt pay-in. And pay he gart bring four gripes and tie pay fast with Iren chains vn-to pay chayere, and in pay overmarke party of pay chayere he gart putt

Footnotes:
1 Four lines with red capital E and small f in the margin beside.
2 Three lines with red capital T and small capital T in margin.
Alexander ascends into the air and descends into the sea.

mete for þe grippes. And þau he wente and sett hym in þe chayere. And onane þe grippes bare hym vp in þe ayer so hwe þat Alexander thoghhte aþ þe erthe na mare þau a fryre þare meln thressehe3 corne, and þe See lyke a dragōn abowte 4 þe erthe. Þau sodanly a speeyanī vertu of goddī vmbilapped þe grippes þat gart þam discende doun to þe erthe in a felda: ten .x. day iournee fra þe Oste, and he hadd na hurt ne na schathe in þe chayere. Bot wit grete disesse at þe laste he 8 come till his Oste.

1 After þis Alexander ymage ned in his hert þat he walde knaw þe preuates þat are in þe see. And onane he gart come before hym aþ þe Maister glasyers þat ware in þe Oste, And comandeðe 12 þam to make hym a grete toune of passandly clere glasse þat he myghthe thurlgh it clerely see aþ maner of thyngȝe þat ware witowten þat. And when it was made he gart tresesse it al abowte wítowten wít barres of yref where þe þe to lang cheynes of 16 yref, and gart a certane of þe strangeste & maste tristy knychtes þat lãngd vn-till hym halde þir cheynes. And þau he went in-to þe toune & gart pykke wele þe entree whare he went in, and þau late it doun into þe See. And þar he sawe dynerse 20 schappes of fisches of dynerse coloures; and sunð he sawe hafe þe schappe of dynerse bestë3 here on þe lande, gangande on fete as bestë3 dose here & etande fruyte of treesse þat growe3 on þe See grunde. Þir bestë3 come till hym. Bot onane as þay 24 saw hym thorow þe glasse þay fledde fra hym. He sawe þarę also many oper mermaylous thynges, þe whilke he walde teft na man bi-caus meñ walde noghte hafe trowed þam if he had talde þam, and at a certayne houre þase þat he hadd assynegned 28 be-føre, his knychtes drewe hym vp oute of þe See.

2 Fra þeine þay Remowèd Fowowande þe bankes of þe Rede See, and lugged þam in a place, whare þare ware wydlþe Bestë3 that hade on þaire heuedis hornes lyke vn-to * sawes, and þay 32 ware als scharpe als swerde. And with thire hornes þay slewe & hurte many knychties of Alexanders & clone þaire cheldes in sonder. Neuer-pe-lesse Alexander knychties slew of þam ecceli.

3 And fra þeine þay remowèd and come in-till wilderness 36

1 Four lines with red capital A and small a in the margin beside.
2 Three lines with red capital F and small f in margin besides.
3 Three lines with red capital A and small a in the margin beside.
The strange beasts. The death of Bucephalus.

bitwex pe rece. See and Araby, whare grete multitude of Pepir grewed; And pare were many grete nedders wit hornnes on paire hehes lyke tuppe hornes, wit pe whilke pay smate Alex- ander knyghtis riȝt fellly. Off pase nedderes swel pe Macedoynes a grete party. 1

1 Þeine pay removed and lugged in a place whare many Rynosephales ware, pe whilke hade hecues & manes lyke horseȝ. And pay hade grete bodyes, and wonder grete teethe and lange, and oute of þaire mouthes pay schotte flawmes of fyre. And when pay saw þe Oste luge þe pay come & assayled þam. And Alexander ran hyder and thedir amanget þe oste and comforted his knyghtes and bad þam feughte manly wit þase monstres. And so pay dide. Neuer-pesse þere ware a grete multitude of his knyghtis slayne of þase bestȝ. Bot of þe Rynosephales þere was slayne an hugge multitude. 8

2 Pauȝ pay removed fra þeine and come in-tiff a champayne cuntree and lugged þamo þere, And lay þere a certane days, Bi-cause of his horse Buktyphalas þat felf seke þere; of þe whilke sekenesse he dyed. And when Alexander saw hym dede he made grete dole for hym and weped for hym riȝt sare. For he hadd borne hym in many a Batelie, and broghte [hym] oute of many perefls. And þere-fore þen he was dede Alexander gart dro aboute hym grete exeqyues and gart make hym a fult riche tumbe & a lyre and diȝt hym þere-in and made a grete citee þere, þe whilke in mynde of his horse he gart cæl Buktyphalas. 20

Alex- ander's steed Buce- phalus dies. He makes a rich tomb and builds a city round him.

3 Fra þeine þay removed and come till a ryuere þat was called Cytan or Deciracy whare meȝ of þe cuntree broghte hym ðam Olyphantes and ðam cartes of werre. And fra þeine þay removed & come till kyngʒ Þerses palace. And in þat Palace pay fande beddeȝ of clene golde many a thowsande. Þare ware also grete fewles white als doufes, þe whilke had knawyn be-fore of a seke maȝ wheder he schulde lyfte or dye. For if þay by-helde þe seke maȝ in þe vesage, he schulde mende & fare welc. And if þay toured þam awaywarde witowtten 24

They come to the palace of Xerxes.

The birds that fore-tell the life or death of a man.

1 Three lines.
2 Three lines.
3 MS. has a small ð written in margin, but no space for the large capital to be put.
The letters of Alexander. His throne.

They come to Babylon and capture it.

Thence Alexander writes to his mother and to Aristotle.

Aristotle writes to Alexander again praising him greatly for his victories.

Alexander has a wondrous throne made.

The throne of Alexander with its images, its ruby, and its inscriptions.

doute he schulde dye,* and if pay toured hym þe bakke wit owttem dowte he sulde dye.

1 For peinge pay removed and come to pe grete Cite of Babiloyne and wann ite oo werre and slew þe kyngþe þare-offe & þe Captayne also. And þare he duelled vn-till his lyffes end; and pat was Bot vij senen Monethes. In þat mene tyne Alexander sent a lettre till Olympias his Moder and till his Mayster Arestotle, latand þame witte of þe Bateiffs and þe dyssese 8 þat þay suffred bathe wynters and Somers in Inde and oper cuntrees, and also of þe Bateiffs þat þay had hadn wit dyuere Monstres. And þame Arestotle wrate anoper lettre till Alex- ander agayne þe whilke was of þis tenour:

2 'Un-tiff Alexandere þe grete kyng of kyng3 Arestotle sende3 joy and seruyce. When I hade redde 3our wyrchipfull lettres I was gretyly astonayd. For whilke cause I desyre with aþ myn hert for to fynde lonynge Þat I myghte selde vn-to þe. 16 I take witnesse at oure goddeþ pat for þe passande hardenesse of þi hert & þe grete auentowrs þat þou hase put þe in, þou erte were worldly for to be loued & praysede. For þou hase sene & assayed þyneþeg þat neuer maþe or þis durste assaye. Whare-for 20 thankynge & lonynge I selde to þe makere of aþ þis wyde werlde þat swylke victoryes hase grantede vn-to þe. For þou hase ouercommen aþ & nane hase ouercommen þe. Fult blysse are aþ þy þrynceþ þat hase bene obeyande vnto þe, and helped þe 24 in aþ thi disesse3.'

3 Aftir þis Alexander gart make in Babyloynie a wonder curious trone 4 of golde, þare was noyte swilk anoper in þe werlde. For þe grekeþe broughte so mekhit golde oute of þerse & 25 oute of Inde, þat ite wonder foro to telle. þis ilke tour e was twlue cubyteþ hye and by twlue greceþ meþ ascended þare-too, and þase greceþ ware aþ of golde. þis trone was wonderfully wroghte and sett apoþ twlue ymageþ of golde, þe 32 whilke trone þe forsaidy mageþ helde 3 þe þame hende. And on þase twlue ymageþ ware wretyn þe names of þe twlue þrynceþ of Macedoynie. þe seet of þe trone was of a Smaragde,
& pe syde; pare off ware of Topazes & in ilkand of pe gree; ware
sett dyverse maneres of precyouse stanes. In pe summyt of pis
trone pare was sett a ruby pat schane on pe nyghte as it hade
bene pe Mone. In pis trone also was pare sett oul like a syde
dyverse ymage3 on pe whilke ware wretwyd bathe in latyne & in
grew* verse3 pat contened aut pe nammes of pe rewmes & cunteeg;
pat Alexander had conquered & ware sugetes vn-till hym.

1 After pis 4 Alexander gert make a coroû of golde sett full
of ait maner of precyouse stanes, & gert wryte apoon it a tyle
in grew & in latyn: 'Ortus & occasus, Aquilo michi seruit
& Auster.' Pat es at saye: 'Est & weste, Northre & southre dose
seruyce vn-to me.' In the mene tyme whils Alexander was in
babylone, a woman was delyuer of a knaye childe pe whilke fra
pe heuede to pe naunyf hadd schappe of man, & was borne dedd:
And fra pe naunyf downwardes it had lyknesse of dyverse
beste3 & was qwykke. 'Pis Monstre was takeû & broghte till
Alexander; & als soû als he saw it he meruaylled gretly
pare-off, & gart come bi-fore hym a philosopher pat couthe of
wiche-crafts, & aschede hym what it sygnfyed. & wheni pe
philosopher saw it, he syghede, & saye wepand sayde vn-to
hym: 'Sothely wirchifull emperour,' quop he, 'pe tyme commeg
nere that pou salt passe out of this werlde.' 'Telle me,' quop
Alexander, 'whereby pou knawes pat.' & pe philosopher
ansuerde & sayde: 'My lorde,' quop he, 'pe halfe of pis Monstre
pat hase pe schappe of man & es dedd, betakens pat pou salt
passe out of pis werlde in haste. & pe toper party pat hase
pe lyknes of dyverse beste3 & es on lyfe, betakynge pe kynges
pat salt come after pe. Bot pare salt nude of pe be lyke
vn-to pe, na mare pe a beste es lyke vn-till a man.' Wheû
Alexander herde pis he was wonder heuy, & sare wepand he
sayde on pis wyse: 'O Allmyghty Jubitry, quop he, 'what
mene3 it pat my dayes salt be so schortte?' Me thynke pat it
had bene semely pat I had lefled langere for till ha endid
thynge3 pat are in my thoghte. Bot for als mekili als it es
noyte plesande vn-to pe, I besekse the pat pou resayffe me wheni
I salt passe hetheû als thynô awei seruant.'

2 In this mene tyme pare was in Macedoyne a lorde pat highte

* Leaf 46 bk.

The crown of Alexander and the inscriptions there-on.

The strange child born in Babylon half alive
& half dead, half man & half animal, & the
meaning it has. The death of Alex-
ander and the coming of his suc-
cessor. In what they shall not be like
him.

2 In this mene tyme pare was in Macedoyne a lorde pat highte

1 Three lines with red capital A and
small a in the margin beside.

2 Four lines with red capital I and
small i in margin beside.
The betrayal and poisoning of Alexander.

Antipater, 

the death of Alexander, who is warned of him by Olympias. 

Antipater, the while of langetyme before had casten for 

pe dedde of Alexander; And wit many oper pat he had cons 

fedred vn-tiff hym he conspyred for to brynge it tyff ende, bot 

he myghte neuer come aboute per-with. For Olympias, Alex 

ander moder, wrate vn-tiff hym ofte-sythes and warned hym 

pat he scholde be warre wit Antipater & his childre, and here 

fore was Antypater wonder sary. So apoyn a tyme he vmb 

thoghte hym pat he myghte neuer come aboute wit his purpose 8 

for to slaa Alexander, but if it ware thurgh enpuysonynge. *And 

so apoyn a daye he went tiff a Sotef leche, and boghte of hym 

a maner of drynke made of puysond that was so felle & so ranke 

pat pare myghte no vesseffe halde it Bot a vesseffe made of Ire 

& pare-in he putt it. And pat he gaffe it his son Cassandre, 

and bad hym bere it tiff his broper Iobas and byd hym, quoyn 

he, gyffe it to kyng Alexander in his drynke, when he see his 

tyme. This ilk Iobas was a faire song man & was duelyngly 

with Alexander, and gretyly by-luffede & cheriste of hym. Bot so it 

be-felle apoyn a tyme pat Alexander smate Iobas on pe heued 

wit a warderere for na trespass. Whare-fore Iobas was gretyly 

anged and greued at Alexander and consented till his dede, and 20 
tuke pe puysond of his broper pat was ordeyned for Alexander 
dede pat luffed hym so mekif. 

And apoyn a daye Alexander gart ordeyne a grete reuelie 
in Babyloune and calld pare too all his prynce3 oyn ilk a syde. 24 

And as he satt at pe mete Imange his prynce3 he was wonder 
mery & gladdde & iocund, and reheted his lorde3 & prayed pat 

pay schulde be mery. Pat Iobas pat serued pe kyng of his 
coupe tufe of pe puysond a poreyn, and putt it vnder pe nayle 28 
of his thawme, and broghte pe coppe to pe kyng full of wyne. 

And he gaffe it to pe kyng, he lete pe puysond faile in pe 
wyne primaly. And als some als pe kyng haddr dronken pe 
puysond, Sudaynly he gaffe a grete scryke, and lene hym down 32 
toward pe riȝte syde. For hym thoghte reghte als a man haddr 
smyten hym in-to pe lyuere wit a suerd. Neuer-pes lesse 
he feyned & forbare a while & suffred a grete penance, and 
wher he myȝte na langere habyde, he rase vp fra pe burde and 36 
saide till his lorde3 & his knyghtes: 'Lordyngis, quoyn he,
The agony of Alexander.

'I pray sow sitt 3e still & etc. & drynke 3 & bess mercy.' But pay ware gretly troubledd and rase vp fra pe burde3 and stode witowtten for to see pe ende. And Alexander went in-till his chambir gretly tourmentid; and soghte a fethir for to put in his throette for to garre hym hafe a vomet of pe puysow hat he had resayffed. And Iobas, hat was cheffe of all this lyse treso3, gatt a fethir & enoynt it wit pe same puysow 8 & broghte it till Alexander; and he tuk it & putt it in his throette, and belyfe * pe puysow vexed hym ay mare & mare. And pa3 Alexander bade ane gange & open pe palace 3tes pat ware on Eufrates banke. And alle pat ny3te he woke in grete payne3 & tourment. And aboute mydnyghtthe he rase oute of pe bedde pat he lay in and putt oute pe lyghte pat brynt by-fore hym, and for he myghte noghte ga vpright3, he creped one hende & one fete doune to-wardes Eufrates for till hafe 16 drownned hym selfe, pat pe strentth of pe water my3th hafe borne hym away where neuer man solde hafe fuid hym.

And Rosan3 his wyfe folowed as faste as scho myghte. And when scho come to hym scho felle vpon hym & embraced hym in hir armes & said vn-till hym: 'Alas, my lorde Alexander,' quo3 scho, 'will poun now leue me & gaa slae thi-selfe.' And scho wepe pat it was dole to see; and Alexander anseuerde & sayde: 'I bescke pe Rosan,' quo3 he, 'pat erte so dere to me 24 & so swete, late name wit of my3 Endynge, if aft it be pat we may na langare hafe ioy togedir.' And pa3 Rosan ledd Alexander agayne to his bedd, and layde hir armes aboute his nekke and kyssede hym many a tyne, and sare wepand said 25 vn-till hym: 'A, A, my swete lorde,' quo3 scho, 'if pine ende be nowe commen, ordayne firste for vs or 3e passe hepine.' And onane he called vn-till hym Iobas & bade hym seche vn-till hym Semyon his notary. And when he was comen he garte bere hym down in-to pe hauflle, and he garte come by-fore hym an3 his prynce3 & bade his notary wryte his testament bi-fore pa3 an3 on3 pis wyse.

1. Aristotle oure dere Maister, we commande the & prayse the, 36 pat of oure awen tresour pou sende to pe preste3 of Egipt pat ministre3 in pe temple, where-in oure body saff be beryed He uses a feather to spew it forth, but again the feather is poisoned. But his wife Rosana follows and prevents him and tries to console him. She asks him first to provide for her. He calls his notary.

1 Three lines with red capital A, and small a in the margin beside, small capital R following.
The will of Alexander. The earthquake.

the Egyptian priest of his man-solem. Ptolemy is the governor. If Roxana bear a man child he, shall be Emperor; * Leaf 43. if a girl they shall choose their own. He apportion his domains, & entered, 3 besande3 of golde. Also I will that Tholomæus pat es kepare of oure body be your Gouernour, And forgetis noghte my laste will, Bot latey my testament be alway bi-fore your eghne so pat it be fulfilled & noghte forgetyn. My will es 4 also pat if Rosafyn my wyfe be delyuer of a knafe childe pat he be your Emperour and gyffe3 hym what name so 3ow liste, and if scho be delyuer of a mayden childe, pað es it my will pat the Macedoynes chese pað a kyng, and ʃat my wyfe be lady of * all 5 my moyles. Also I will pat Tholomæus be kyng of Egipt, and pat he tak til his wyfe Cleopatra, pat my Fader wedded sum-tyme here bi-fore, and pat he be lorde & prynce ouer all pe lorde3 of pe Este euën vn-to Batetian. Also I will pat my 12 broper Arriudes be kyng of pe Pelopones, also pat Cleopater be kyng of Perse, Mellagere kyng of Ethoply, And Anthiochus be kyng vn-to pe land3 of Gog & magoge, Areste3 kyng of Inde, Lissymenus lorde of Selence, Lythamone kyng of hungary, Cauleus 16 kyng of Ermomy, Illiceus kyng of Dalmae. Symeon my Notary, will I, be Kyng of Capadoce & Pamphily, Cassander & Iobas be lorde3 vn-to pe Ryuer ʃat es called Soff, Antipater paire Fader be kyng of Cicile. When this testament was in wrytynge 20 bi-fore Alexander Sodeynly pare come a thommer & a leunynge & ape erthedoun riʒte a hedous, so pat all babylayne quoke pare-wit. And than throrrowe all Babylayne pe noyse rase pat Alexander was dede. And pað all pe Macedoynes rasse hallely 24 and come armed4 to pe Palace, and cryed on pe prynce3 & said5 vn-to pað: ʃetthely, quòp pay, ʃut if pe onaue schewe vs oure Emperour we saft slaa 3ow ilk ane.' And when kyng Alexander herde swilke noyse he askede whate it ment, and pe prynce3 28 anuerde & sayde: 'Pe Macedoynes,' quòp pay, 'are come3 armede hedir before pe ʃates, & says sekerly bot if pay see 3ow pay saft slaa vs afe are ʃay passe hepine.' And when Alexander herde pis, he badd'his knyghtis pat pay scholde take hym vp, and bere 32 hym in-to pe consistorye. And pay did soo. And pað he garte open6 pe Palace ʃates pat pe Macedoynes my3te come hy-fore hym. And pað kyng Alexander be-ga3 to comend3 pað of paire strenth & paire grete doghtynes, and charged pað pat 36 pay scholde be in pesse & reste ilkane wit open. Pað pe Macedoynes, sape wipande, sayde vn-till Alexander: 'A, A, wirchipful,' quòp pay, 'ordayne & teile vs are 3e passe
Alexander and the Macedonians.

113

heyn whan he will bat be our empourer after 3owe. And Alexander anserde & sayde, 'A, A, my dere knyghtis,' quop he, 'whan I am dede whaym so he will chese, be our empourer 4 after mee.' And pay anserde, 'Lord,' quop pay, 'we besoek 3owe bat he will grant vs Perdic to be our Empourer.'

'I vouche wele safe,' quop Alexander, 'bat Perdic be your Empourer. Gers hym come be-forne mee.' And whan he was 8 come by-forne hym he gaffe hym pe kyngdom* of Macedoyn wit pe Empourerchipe. And he gaffe hym also Rosam for to be his wyff, and prayde hym bat he walde be gude & gentill tiff birt. And pan he kyssede all pe lorde; & pe knyghtis of Macedoyn ilkane after oper, and sighed and weped wonder sare. Fare was pan so grete dole & wepynge, pat it was lyke a thonere. For meñ Supposes; pat noting allynly meñ made Sorow for pe dede of so worthy ane Empourer, Bot also pe soid 16 and all pe oper planetis and elements ware troubled.

2 A prynce of Macedoyn stode nere Alexander bedd' bat highte Seleucus, & wit grete dole & wepynge he sayd: 'A, A, pou wirchifull empourer,' quop he, 'what saff we do whan pou 20 ert dede. Philippe bi fader gouerned vs wele & alle our rewm, Bot pe gentilnes & pe largesse of the na tunge may tell.'

And pan Alexander sett hym vp in his bedd' and gaffe hym selfe a grete flappe on pe cheke and by-gaun for to wepe rite 24 bitterly, and in pe langage of Macedoyn, he sayde on pis wyse:

'Ful waa es me vnhappy wreehe,' quop he, 'pat ever I was borne to maun. For now Alexander dyes and Macedoyn saff waxe ay lesse & lesse and emenische day bi day.' Than aff pe Macedoynes wit an hye voyce and bitter wepyng sayd vn-tiff hym: 'Better it ware tiff vs,' quop pay, 'for to dy wit pe pain for to se pe dy in oure presence. For wele we wate pat, after pe dede of the, pe kyngdom of Macedoyn es vndone for ouere.'

32 Allas our wirchifull Alexander, why lefes pou vs here and wendes away be thynd ane, withowe thi Macedoynes?' Than kyng Alexander alway sighand' & wepand' said vn-to pan: 'A, A, my dere Macedoynes,' quop he, 'fra this tym forwarde 36 saff neuer your name bafe lordchipe ouer pe Barbarenes.' And pain pe Macedoynes cryed' and sayde: 'O wirchifull lorde,' quop

him for Perdicas for their king.

He gives

Selenus

grieves by

Alexander's

beside that they shall have no good leader.

Alexander bewails his fate that Macedonians

shall dwindle with his death.

All the Macedonians say it were better to die with him.

The grief of the Macedonians.

1 Three lines with red capital A, and smaller a in the margin beside.

2 Four lines with red capital A, and small a in the margin beside.
The death and burial of Alexander.

1 Alexander was a man of a common stature, wit a large nekke, Faire eghne & glad, his chekes ruddy, and all he remnant of his lymmes were faire & semely & lyke vn-tiff a lorde. He overcomne all men & never was overcomen. The lenth 32 of his lyffe was xxxij yere, twa & thrifty yere & seceu monethes. Fra pe twentyd yere of his birtbe he gaffe hym to werre, and in twelue yere he conquered all pe werlde, and made subiect un-tiff hym alkynd macyouns. Seceu monethes he ristede hym. He was 36 borne on pe vij kl of January, and dyed on pe vij kl of August.

[1] Large red capital A.
His names.

He byggid also in his lyfe xij grete cite3 pat hider-to-warde3 bene enhabyt, and pis are paire names. Firste Alexander pat es called ypysilicas, pe seconde Alexander es called Bepyporeum, 4 pe thrid Alexander es callede Sithia, pe fertohe Alexander es called Bicontristi, pe fift Alexander es called Peraucton, pe seext Alexander es called Buctiphalon, pe seuent es called vnder pe ryuer of Tygre, pe aughten New Babiloyne, pe nyend Aptreadaun, 8 pe tend Messagetes, pe elluened Ypsyacon, pe twelfed es called Egipt.

Explicit vita Alexandry magni conqueroris.

Here ende3 pe lyf of gret Alexander conquerour of all pe 12 worlde.
Early English Text Society.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.
BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C
AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,
AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.
Committee of Management:

**Director:** PROF. I. GOLLANZC, LITT.D.; KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON, W.C.

**Assistant Director:** JOHN MUNRO, ESQ.

**Treasurer:** HENRY B. WHEATLEY. ESQ.

**Hon. Sec.:** W. A. DALZIEL, ESQ., 67, VICTORIA ROAD, FINSBURY PARK, N.

**Hon. Secs.**
- South & West: Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.

HENRY BRADLEY, M.A., PH.D.
REV. DR. ANDREW CLARK, M.A.
PROF. W. P. KER, LL.D.
SIR SIDNEY L. LEE, LITT.D.
HENRY LITTLEHALES, ESQ.
SIR J. A. H. MURRAY, LITT.D.
PROF. NAPIER, PH.D.
ALFRED W. POLLARD, M.A.
PROF. J. SCHICK, PH.D.
ROBERT STEELE, ESQ.
SIR GEORGE F. WARNER.
DR. W. ALDIS WRIGHT.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

**Bankers:**

THE UNION OF LONDON AND SMITHS BANK, 2, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

The Early English Text Society was started by the late Dr. Furnivall in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the Original Series with which the Society began, an Extra Series which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the forty-eight years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £30,000, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspeare, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the cry of Great Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that every Member will bring before his or her friends and acquainances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper History of our Language or Social Life is possible.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the Original Series, and £1 1s. for the Extra Series, due in advance on the 1st of January, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order. crossed 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists: but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.
The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1896, and also of nos. 29, 26, and 33. Dr. Otto Glanning has undertaken \textit{Selecte Marlorate} and \textit{Holli Medenland} is in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called 'Reprints,' these books will be new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not notist by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes.

A gratifying gift is to be made to the Society. The American owner of the unique MS. of the Works of John Metham—whose Romance of Amours and Cleopas was sketched by Dr. Furnivall in his new edition of \textit{Political, Religious and Love Poems}, No. 15 in the Society's Original Series—has promised to give the Society an edition of his MS. prepared by Dr. Hardin Craig of Princeton, and it will be issued next year as No. 192 of the Original Series. The giver hopes that his example may be followed by other folk, as the support hitherto given to the Society is so far below that which it deserves.


The Original Series Texts for 1912 were, No. 144, \textit{The English Register of Osney Abbey}, by Oxford, Part II, containing Forewords, Grammar Notes and Indexes, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark, and No. 145, \textit{The Northern Passion}, Part I, containing the four parallel texts of the poem, with variants from other manuscripts, edited by Miss Frances A. Foster.

Mr. John Munro has at press a revised and enlarged edition of Original Series, No. 26, the shorter pieces from the Thornton Manuscript, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, and this will be sent out to all subscribers to the Original Series for 1913. A revised edition of Dr. MacCracken's \textit{Minor Poems of Lydgate}, Part I, will be issued to subscribers of 1910.

The Texts for future years will be chosen from Part III of \textit{The Brut}; Part III of the \textit{Alphabet of Tales}, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks; Part II of Mr. A. O. Belfour's \textit{Twelfth Century Houses}; and Part IV of Miss Dormer Harris's \textit{Coventry Lecott Book}. Later Texts will be Part III of Robert of Brunne's \textit{Handlyng Synne}, with a Glossary of Wm. of Wadington's English words in his \textit{Manuel des Pocheiz} and comments on them, by Mr. Dickson Brown; Part II of the \textit{Exeter Book}—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Professor Gollancz; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holzhanssen's \textit{Vices and Virtues}; Part II of \textit{Jacob's Well}, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the \textit{Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem}, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kolbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluzn; an Introduction and Glossary to the \textit{Minor Poems} of the \textit{Vernon MS.} by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alan Chartier's \textit{Quadriodigitale}, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll., Oxford No. 85, by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins; and the \textit{Early Verse and Prose in the Harleian MS. 2253}, re-edited by Miss Hilda Murray. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough having given the Society a copy of the \textit{Lofriche Canonicale} rude, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. Cambridge, Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the English \textit{Capitula} of Bp. Theodulf; it is now at press.


The Extra Series Texts for 1911 were, No. CVIII, \textit{Lydgate's Siege of Thebes}, Part I, the text, edited from the MSS. by Dr. A. Erdmann; and No. CIX, \textit{Pauteope}, Part I, edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Boltker.

The Extra Series Texts for 1912 were, No. CX, \textit{Cortland's Mirror of the World}, edited with reproductions of all the woodcuts, by Dr. O. H. Prior, M.A., and No. CXI, \textit{Cortland's History of Jason}, Part I, the text, edited by Mr. John Munro (both at press).

edition of The Dance of Death from the Ellesmere and other MS.; The Owl and Nightingale, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. Erbe’s re-edition of Mirk’s Festival, Part II; Dr. M. Konrath’s re-edition of William of Shoreham’s Poems, Part II; Professor Gollancz’s re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, Winner and Waster, &c.; about 1500; Dr. Norman Moore’s re-edition of The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew’s Hospital, London, from the unique MS. about 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Rahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; The Craft of Nombragne, with other of the earliest English Treatises on Arithmetic, edited by K. Steele, B.A.; and the Second Part of the prose Romance of Melusine—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A.

Later Texts for the Extra Series will include The Three Kings’ Sons, Part II, the Introduction, &c., by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Mathers; Prof. J. D. Moore’s editions of John Hars’ Orthography (MS. 151 A.D.) black-letter 1589, and Method to teach Reading, 1570; Deguillerville’s Pilgrimage of the Soul, in English prose, edited by W. Hans Koestner. (For the three prose versions of The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years’ work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years’ work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their Texts.

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguillerville’s Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Lord Aldenham’s MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS., which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T. S.’s copies of the Deguillerville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies.

Guillaume de Deguillerville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Sois, wrote his first verse Pilgrimage de l’Homme in 1330-1 when he was 36. Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it, a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Land Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740. A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John’s Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Land MS. 740 was somewhat condens’d and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. E. 30, in the Cambridge University Library; The Pilgrimage of the Pilgrimage, as in this World, compiled by Will. Baspooe, whose copy “was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1615, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655.” This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his Pilgrim’s Progress. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Herritage’s edition of the Gesta Romanorum for the Society. In February 1643, Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguillerville’s first verse Pilgrimage into a prose Pilgrimage de la vie humaine. By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopes’s French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society’s edition.

The Second Version of Deguillerville’s Pilgrimage de l’Homme, A.D. 1355 or -6, was Englished in verse by Lydgate in 1426, and, thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, John Stowe, a complete text of Lydgate’s poem has been edited for the Society by Dr. Furnivall. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4397, and Additional 22, 3937 and 25, 594) are all of the First Version.

1 He was born about 1295. See Abbé Goujet’s Bibliothèque française, Vol. IX, p. 73-4—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.
2 The Roxburghe Club’s copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.
3 These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.
4 Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.
5 According to Lord Aldenham’s MS.
6 These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.
7 15th cent., containing only the Vie humaine.
8 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ’s.
9 14th cent., containing the Vie humaine and the 2nd Pilgrimage, de l’Ami: both incomplete.
Besides his first *Pelerinaige de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separée du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesu." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (with poems, by Hoccleve, already printed for the Society with that author's *Regement of Princes*), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,1 at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1, 7, and Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has "somewhat of additions" as Caxton says, and some shortening too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englischer's interesting Epilogue in the Egerton MS. This prose Englishing of the *Soule* has been copied and will be edited for the Society by Mr. Hans Koeestner. Of the Pilgrimage of Jesus, no Englishing is known.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c., will repeat the Land set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Land 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's Englishing of *Bartholomaeus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopaedia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of *Elfrie's prose*,2 Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of *Elfrie's Metrical Homilies*. The late Prof. Kößling left complete his text, for the Society, of the *Ancern Rihelu*, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thummler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtrees Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society, which has done such admirable work under its founders Prof. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kößling, the living Hansknecht, Einenkel, Hæueisch, Kaluza, Huepe, Adam, Holthansen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandes, Sieper, Konrath, Wülfing, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock; Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser (alas, now dead)—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; Austria, Dr. von Fleischhacker; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Profs. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Ilulme, Bryce, Craig, Drs. Bergen, MacCracken, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has had from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most promising results of the Society's efforts.

**ORIGINAL SERIES. (One guinea each year.)**

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1300 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 16s. 1864
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4s. 1879
3. Lauer on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. 1877
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 1897
5. Hume's Orthographie and Congrundie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. 1865
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 8s. 1875
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1520, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s. 1879
8. Mort Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. 7s. 1897
9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 10s. 1894
10. Merlin, ab. 1410, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2s. 6d. 1869
11. Lyndsey's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 1875

1 Ab. 1130, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c.—and damned souls, frires, angels, &c.
2 Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the *Elfrie Society*, are still in stock.

Of the Verecelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.
EXTRA SERIES. (One guinea each year.)

The Publications for 1867-1910 (one guinea each year) are—


110. Caution's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham, A.D. 1451, ed. by J. J. Munro. 1863

114. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dornier Harris. Part III. 1864

115. John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano, &c., ed. by D'Arcy Power, M.D. 1865

115b. c, d, e. Extra Issue. The Fia Tourson Controversy: c. Dr. Jusserand's 1st Reply to Prof. Manly; d. Prof. Manly's Answer to Dr. Jusserand; e. Dr. Jusserand's 2nd Reply to Prof. Manly; e. Mr. R. W. Chamber's Article: f. Dr. Henry Bradley's Rejoinder to Mr. R. W. Chambers (issued separately). 1866

120. Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham. A.D. 1451, ed. by J. J. Munro. 1866

121. Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Idica Murray, M.A. 1867

122. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 1868


124. The English Register of Ceseay Abbey, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 1869

126. The Northern Passion, ed. by Miss F. A. Foster. Part I. the four parallel texts. 1870

126c. The Coventry Leet Book, ed. Miss M. Dornier Harris, Introduction, Indexes, etc. Part IV. 1871


133b. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1874


133e. Henry Bradshaw's Oxford Leet Book, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1877


133g. Henry Bradshaw's Oxford Leet Book, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1879

133h. Henry Bradshaw's Oxford Leet Book, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1880


133m. Henry Bradshaw's Oxford Leet Book, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1885


133r. Henry Bradshaw's Oxford Leet Book, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1890


134. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1899

134a. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1900

134b. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1901

134c. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1902

134d. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1903

134e. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1904

134f. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1905

134g. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1906

134h. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1907

134i. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1908

134j. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1909

134k. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1910

134l. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1911

134m. The English Squire's Register, ed. by W. W. Skeat, M.A. 1912
EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Early English Text Society's last Announcements, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.
The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buellbrin. Part II.  
The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.  
Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, M.A.  
Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Hoithhausen.

All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of

Vercelli MS., ed., by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.  
The engligh Disciplina Clericale, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.  
The Statutes of Black Roger, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.

The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Lorenz and F. Harsley, B.A.  
Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a Pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.

Bryhtferth's Handboc, ed. by Prof. G. Hemp.

Early English Confessonals, ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.

The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.

The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hon. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. G. A. Bensock, B.A.

Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vornon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Brumley, M.A.

A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemaehce's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.

Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.

Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Forster.

Laufreue's Curigice, ab. 1400 a.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.

William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldhy, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.


Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph.D.

Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.

Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buellbrin.


Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by F. W. Clarke, M.A.

Early English Homilies in Harl. 2270, &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Frieländier.

Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.


The Fore Caift, edited from its MSS., by Mr. Peake.

Trevissa's English Vegetius on the Art of War, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Ox., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.


Knighthood and Battle, a verse-Vegetius from a Pembrroke Coll. MS., Camb., ed. Dr. R. Dyiloekii.

Othere and Hactor, 3 texts—2 from MSS., from WYER's print, edited by Jy. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.

Minor Poems of the Vernon MS. Part III. Introduction and Glossary by H. Hartley, M.A.


Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales Esq. [Copied.

EXTRA SERIES.


Sir Triestrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS., edited by George F. Black.

De Guillepulle's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner.


A Composition of Surgery, from H. de Maneville and Lanfranc, a.d. 1392, ed. Dr. J. F. Payne.

William Staunton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.

Trevissa's Bartholomew de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.

Batten's Dialogue against the Fever Pestilence, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. II. and M. Bullen. Part II.

The Romance of Beota and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buellbrin.

The Romance of Girianos, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buellbrin.

Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.

Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.

Maneville's Viage and Travaille, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c. [Editor wanted.]

Aowynge of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buellbrin.

Say of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.

Anewdaye's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Donec 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Walfing.


Lydgate's Lyfe of eure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fleider, Ph.D.

Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.

Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 1690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.

The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.
EXTRA SERIES (continued).

Among the MSS, and old books which need copying or re-editing, are:

ORIGINAL SERIES.

English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (6th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).

Maumetrie, from Lord Tolemmarie's MS.


Biblical MS., Corpus Cambri, 434 (ib. 1375).

Hampole's unprinted Works.

Clowde of Unknowynge, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959.


A Lanterne of Hist., from Harl. MS. 2924.

Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.

Boethius de Consolac, Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.

Early Treatises on Music; Descant, the Gamme, &c.

Skelton's engiulating of Diodorus Siculus.

Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.

Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson. A. 399. Done 222, &c.).

Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.

Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.

T. Bres's Passion of Christ, 1432, Harl. 2338.

T. Crophill or Cephirll's Tracts, Harl. 1735.

Memoriale Credencia, &c., Harl. 3590.

Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.

Early Norwich Wills.

EXTRA SERIES.

Erle of Telous
Ypitos.

Sir Egiamoure.
Alexander.

Orfeo (Deby. 86).

Dialogues between the Soul and Body.

Barlaam and Josaphat.

Amis and Amiloun.

Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemarie's MS.

The Troy-Book fragments once said Barbour's, in the Cambr. Univ. Library and Donne MSS.

Poems of Charies, Duke of Orleans.

Caroes and Songs.

Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 48.

Book for Recluses, Harl. 2972.

Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2330, &c.

H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2398, art. 20.

Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.

Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.

Lyricl Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.

Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1395, Corp. Oxf. 120.

English Miscellanies from MSS. Corp. Oxford.

Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.

Disc Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Boll. Land 99.


Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2200.

Maundeyle's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.


Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.

Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6355.


Verse and Prose in Harl. MS. 4012.

Nicholas of Hereford's English Bible.

The Prickynge of Love, Harl. 2254, Vernon, &c.

More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 ls. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of January, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, cross 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series. and 1s. for the EXTRA SERIES, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

Foreign Subscriptions can be paid, and the Society's Texts delivered, through Asher & Co., 17, Behrenstrasse, Berlin.